Grammar and Vocabulary
OF THE
Samoan Language

Together with Remarks on some of the Points of Similarity between the Samoan and the Tahitian and Maori Languages

By

H. NEFFGEN

Translated from the German by
ARNOLD B. STOCK

London:
KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRUBNER & Co., Ltd.
Broadway House, 68-74, Carter Lane, E.C.
1918
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRONUNCIATION</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WORD SYSTEM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declension</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns, Personal</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Verb</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Optative Mood</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Subjunctive Mood</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Infinitive Mood</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Participle</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Medium Form</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Verbs</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Auxiliary Verbs</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Compound Verbs</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Cardinal Numerals</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ordinal Numerals</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fractions</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiplication Numerals</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Prepositions</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs of Place</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs of Time</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Adverbs</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjunctions</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Words only Used with Reference to Chiefs</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax, and Rules applying to it</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Adjective</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative Sentences</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selections for Reading</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remarks on some of the points of similarity between the Samoan and the Tahitian and Maori Languages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tahitian</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maori</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selections for Reading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tahitian</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maori</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English-Samoan</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samoan-English</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Words in General Use Systematically Arranged</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GRAMMAR
OF THE
SAMOAN LANGUAGE

INTRODUCTION

The Samoan is a branch of the Malay-Polynesian language, which is spread over the whole island world of the Pacific Ocean from Madagascar to South America, and is to be found (with its various dialects) in the Melanesian, Malayan, and Polynesian groups of islands. It is one of the numerous Polynesian tongues which are in use over the eastern and south-eastern area of Malay-Polynesia, extending, roughly, from New Zealand to the Hawaiian Islands.

From the standpoint of grammar the Polynesian languages cannot be regarded as strong, and few letters of the alphabet are utilized. D and B are never used; H, R, and K are of rare occurrence, and then only in words that have been introduced. All words have a vowel termination, and their etymological forms are constructed by the employment of particles attached to the roots, thereby forming agglutinative or polysynthetic words, the particles being sometimes strung one after the other throughout an entire sentence. For example: fa'a, to cause, and 'uma, quite, all; fa'a'uma, to finish, terminate; fia, to be willing; inu, to drink; fia'ainu, to be thirsty; fa'a, to induce; o'o, to go; fa'a'ao'o, to lead, and so on.
The Samoan alphabet is comprised of only fourteen letters—five vowels, a, e, i, o, u, and nine consonants, f, g, l, m, n, p, s, t, v,—h, k, and r only occurring in words of foreign origin, as auro, gold; areto, bread; ki, key. The language now contains many introduced words, more or less distorted by added vowels and substituted consonants, in order to enable the native to articulate them.
PRONUNCIATION

VOWELS

A is pronounced like a in father
E , , , , a , , fate
I , , , , i , , machine
O , , , , o , , note
U , , , , u , , flute

Diphthongs are a little more strongly accentuated than in English, and each vowel is pronounced separately. When written, however, the diacritical sign—'—is used, etymological considerations making this necessary. In place of the (') there was formerly a consonant, which now has gone out of use. Ex.: pu'a'a, pig (puá-a); i'o, there (i-ō); u'u, fist (u'-u).

CONSONANTS

F is pronounced the same as in English.
G has the sound of ng in singer, and is never strongly enunciated like the ng in younger. Ex.: tagi, weep, cry—tangi; geno, beckon—ngenō.
L, m, n, p, s, and v all have the same pronunciation as in English.
T is always sounded as in English, except in a few places in Samoa, where it resembles k, due, presumably, to the influence of a foreign tongue at some remote period. This is not to be regarded as a rule, but merely a provincialism.

There are no double consonants in Samoan, but every
consonant is followed by a vowel, even in foreign proper names. *Ex.: Peteru, Peter.*

Every word terminates with a vowel, thereby contributing greatly to the softness and beauty of the language.

Proper names are the only words written with a capital letter.

The penultimate syllable is the one on which the accent most usually falls, but sometimes it may be placed on the last or second from last, in which cases it is shown by a stroke over the vowel to be accented. *Ex.: tama, boy; tamā, father; tamāloa, fellow; mānaia, pretty.*

Most words begin with f, l, m, p, or t.

So far as the grammar and syntax of the language are concerned they are reflected in the character of the Samoan, who is amiable, honest, and friendly. He is lazy, though, and will make a promise readily enough, but the fulfilment of it is another matter. He is of a forgiving nature. His flighty and pleasure-loving disposition is the most noticeable of his characteristics, and this shows itself particularly in his language. Instead of confining himself to any particular rules in the matter of speech, it seems to be the custom to babble on regardless of sense, according to our notions, and it often occurs that in one sentence a word may be repeated which has quite another meaning when employed a second time. All peculiarities which appear in his language are attributable to the Samoan's sunny, happy-go-lucky disposition, together with an inborn remissness and unreliability. In many cases there are no means of distinguishing between Active and Passive: nine particles go to the formation of the latter, but no special rules can be laid down for their use. This renders it a little perplexing for the student at first, but in general the language cannot be said to present many difficulties.
WORD SYSTEM

ARTICLE

The definite article is expressed by 'o le (pronounced oh lay) and the indefinite by se. Ex.: 'o le fale, the house; 'o le i'e, the cloth; se teine, a girl. When it is wished to emphasize the indefinite article, tasi, one, is often placed before the noun, but in this case the definite article is used with it. Ex.: 'o le tasi tangata, a man. Frequently le is used alone instead of 'o le when speaking of a thing in a general way, but when the definite article appears as the first word in, or at the very beginning of, a sentence, 'o le should always be employed.

NOUN

There is only one gender, properly speaking, in Samoan, and no grammatical distinction between man and woman, but in referring to animals, which are considered inferior beings, the sex, where it is necessary, is distinguished by the words poa, male, and fāfine, female.

The definite article, 'o le, precedes all nouns in the singular number, and 'o those in the plural, but when a thing is referred to in a general way this is also dispensed with. Ex.: 'o le māile, the dog; 'o māile, the dogs; māile, dogs. The dual number is rendered by 'o la māile, the two dogs, or both the dogs.

DECLENSION

As is the case in English, there is no proper declension of the noun in the Samoan language, but it is formed by the use of prepositions.
The plural is formed in exactly the same manner, but that le is dropped out. Either form of the genitive singular can be used—o le or a le. The mo and ma of the dative are also interchangeable, and the use of either can be left to the pleasure of the speaker, but should a particle precede the preposition, mo follows and not ma.

In the accusative the preposition i appears before the noun. This has the meaning of in. The accusative often appears in Samoan where in a European language another case would be used, but this will be dealt with later. The i is changed into ia before proper names and personal pronouns. Ex.: ia te 'oe, thee; ia Tui (name).

If a word in the accusative should directly follow a verb the i is dropped and le only remains. Ex.: ina tuli'ese le tamāloa!, drive the fellow away! It is seldom, however, that the Samoan will be found to use the full accusative case.

In the vocative the 'o is not used, but an e follows the word. Ex.: le alii e!, Sir! Often the entire article, 'o le, is abandoned. Ex.: sole e!, friend!; tamā e!, father! This is very general. The above rules also apply to the plural.

In regard to persons and things alluded to in a collective sense the word 'au is often employed. It is always used
in the plural, and is best translated by folk, people. *Ex.:* 'o le 'au uso, brethren, community (brother-folk); va'a, ship; 'auva'a, sailors (ship-folk); 'o le 'auupega, warriors (people of the arms).

**ADJECTIVE**

The Samoan adjective is always placed after the noun it qualifies, either directly following, or in combination with an *e*, and, like the noun, is invariable, except when it is used—which often happens—as a verb. In this case, now and then, a change takes place in the plural. *Ex.:* 'o le 'ie mūmū, the red cloth; 'o le mauga maualuga, the high mountain; 'o le tama itiiti, the little child; 'o tagata leaga, the wicked men.

There are adjectives of root origin, such as fou, new, lelei, beautiful, and those that are derived and originate from other parts of speech, either by the addition of particles or the amalgamation of several words. *Ex.:* 'o le ma'a, the stone; ma'a'a, stony; 'o le 'ele 'ele, the dirt; 'ele 'ele 'a, dirty; matapua'a, ugly (derived from mata, face, and pua'a, pig); mata'ū, avaricious (derived from mata and 'ū, angry, peevish appearance). As already mentioned, verbs can take the place of adjectives and are treated as such, these words having a plural formation. *Ex.:* vai, water; tafe, flow; vaitafe, the river, flowing water; fetū, star; lele, to fly; fetūlele, the shooting-star.

A substantive can also take the place of an adjective. *Ex.:* 'ie, cloth; māmoe, sheep; 'ie māmoe, blanket, coverlet; fale 'ie, house of cloth, tent.

Adjectives which denote colour are reduplicated. *Ex.:* mūmū, red (from mū, to burn); sinasina, white (from sina, to be white); samasama, yellow (from sama,
to dye). When these adjectives stand alone the reduplicated form is used, but if directly qualifying a noun, they lose it. *Ex.*: "'o le 'ofu sina, the white dress. But, *e samasama le fuga lea,* this flower is yellow (it is yellow the flower this).

In the case of several adjectives being used with a noun, the first one follows it directly and the others are connected by means of the conjunction *ma* (and), and the article *le.* *Ex.:* "'o le tasi tagata mānaia ma le aulelei, a distinguished and handsome man; 'o le papa mafolafola ma le molemole, a level and smooth rock; 'o fānau e leaga ma le fā' atitipa, the children are wicked and dirty.

**COMPARATIVE**

The Samoan has no method of comparing the adjective such as we have in English. He often employs two adjectives, one of which may have a contrary meaning to the other. The following examples will best explain. *Ex.:* "*e matalelei le mea lenei 'a e matapua'a le mea lea,* this is more beautiful than ... *matalelei,* beautiful; *le mea lenei,* this; 'a, but; *matapua'a,* ugly; *le mea lea,* that. This is beautiful, but that is ugly. *E lelei ona ō i mātou 'a e leaga ona nonofo,* it is better to go than remain. Really, it is good for us to go (ō), but it is bad for us to remain.

There is also another means of denoting comparison when dealing with persons or things. *Sili, silisili,* very; *matuā,* sure; *atili,* enormous; *lava* (placed after), very; *aupito,* excessively. When these are placed in apodosis (the consequent clause of a sentence) the compared noun takes the accusative form (denoted by the loss of the 'o
in the article, 'o le). Ex.: e sili tele le mauga i le fale, the mountain is bigger than the house. Tele, big; 'o le mauga, the mountain.

Note.—In Samoan the subject usually takes second place, in which case the article 'o is almost always omitted. Ex.: 'ua e sili matua le tama lenei i lenā, this boy is older than that one. But you can also say: e matua le tama lenei 'a e itiiti lenā, this boy is old, but that one is young (itiiti). The latter turn of phrase can, however, only be used to express contrast: good-bad; polite-bad-mannered. The Samoan would mostly use the former method of expressing himself in the above examples, especially as it sounds better and fewer words are necessary.

**SUPERLATIVE**

The superlative is formed by the aid of adverbs, which are placed sometimes before and sometimes after. Matuā, sili, silisili appear before, and lava, tasi, na'uā after the accompanying adjective. Ex.: matuā tele, or tele lava, very large; 'o le silisili tele, the very highest; 'o le aupito itiiti i fānau, the smallest of the children. For very big, the Samoan simply uses the word sili, which is then placed after the noun and serves as an adjective. If a superlative is employed in a comparative sense the object may be either in the genitive or—more often—in the accusative. Ex.: 'o le sili iate 'outou, the greatest amongst you. Ia te 'outou is the accusative of 'o 'outou, you. 'O le aupito itiiti o 'ou uso, the smallest of my brothers. O o'u is the genitive plural of lo'u, my.

Should the superlative form of the adjective be used with a noun the particle e is inserted.
Very often the Samoan will not employ the comparative, particularly if no confusion or mistake as to meaning is likely to arise.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{'ofu,} & \quad \text{coat} \\
\text{tamāloa,} & \quad \text{fellow} \\
\text{fāfine,} & \quad \text{woman} \\
\text{alii,} & \quad \text{gentleman, chief} \\
\text{tupu,} & \quad \text{king} \\
\text{tama,} & \quad \text{boy, child} \\
\text{tamā,} & \quad \text{father} \\
\text{tinā,} & \quad \text{mother} \\
\text{pāvē,} & \quad \text{lazy} \\
\text{oti,} & \quad \text{to die, dead} \\
\text{ma,} & \quad \text{and} \\
\text{fulu,} & \quad \text{hair, feathers} \\
\text{solofanua,} & \quad \text{horse} \\
\text{mama,} & \quad \text{ring} \\
\text{itiiti,} & \quad \text{little} \\
\text{amiontonu,} & \quad \text{honest, just} \\
\text{uliuli,} & \quad \text{black} \\
\text{filigā,} & \quad \text{industrious} \\
\text{moe,} & \quad \text{sleep} \\
\text{ mataiwi,} & \quad \text{blind}
\end{align*}
\]

**Note.**—The auxiliary verb to be is generally not expressed in Samoan, except when it is used in conjunction with personal pronouns, but this will be discussed in its proper place.

Verbs do not vary from their root-formation in the singular.

'/_ua/ is the word used to distinguish transitive verbs in both their present and past tenses. *Ex.*: '/_ua moe le tinā/, the mother sleeps; '/_ua tā le tamāloa ia te a’u/, the fellow struck me.

**Exercise**

Translate into English: 'o le tamā o le tama.—'ua amiontonu le alii.—'ua oti le solofanua.—e matua ma le mataiwi le teine.—'ua e uliuli 'o fulu a le teine.—'ua filigā le tama lenei 'a e pāvē 'o lea.—'o le mama o le alii.—'o le solofanua o le tupu.—'ua itiiti le tama lea.

Into Samoan: The men are lazy.—The father of the king is dead.—The coat of the boy is white.—The horse is very big (*tele lava*).—The man is bigger than the boy.—
The mother of the children.—The just king.—The horse of the man is small and black.—The boy of the king is industrious.

**PRONOUNS**

**PERSONAL PRONOUNS**

The use of these is very simple, and they are declined in the same way as substantives. It is only to be noted that in the accusative ia is used instead of i, and that between ia and the pronoun, te is inserted for the sake of euphony.

The first and third persons have a euphonic i before the pronoun in dual and plural.

Besides the singular and plural numbers there is also a dual, which is only employed when speaking of two persons. *Ex.: 'o 'oe, thou; 'o oulua, you two, both of you; 'o 'outou, you (several).*

There are two forms of the first persons in both dual and plural, the use of which is determined by whether the person addressed is excluded or not. *Ex.: 'o a'u, I; 'o i tāua, we two (you and I; dual), inclusive of the person addressed; and 'o i māua, we two (not you; dual), exclusive of the person addressed; 'o i tātou, we all (plural), inclusive; 'o i mātou, we (not including you I am now talking to; plural), exclusive.*

The personal pronouns are:

**SINGULAR**

'ō a'u, or 'ou, or ta, I
'ō 'oe, thou
'ō ia, he, she, it
DUAL

' o i tāua, or tā,  
  we two (inclusive)
' o i māua, or mā,  
  we two (exclusive)
' o 'oulua,  
  you two
' o i lāua, or lā,  
  they two

PLURAL

' o i tātou,  
  we (inclusive)
' o i mātou,  
  we (exclusive)
' o 'outou,  
  you
' o i lātou,  
  they

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS

It might be mentioned that an ablative case can be formed by the use of the preposition e, by, through.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR

Nom.  ' o a'u, 'ou, ta,  
  I
Gen.  ' o 'au, or a a'u,  
  of me, mine
Dat.  mo a'u, ma a'u (mo' u, or ma' u),  
  to me
Acc.  ia te i tāua,  
  me
Abl.  e a'u,  
  by me, through me

Dual

Nom.  ' o i tāua,  
  we two (inclusive)
Gen.  o i tāua,  
  of us two ("")
Dat.  mo i tāua,  
  to us two ("")
Acc.  ia te i tāua,  
  us two ("")
Abl.  e i tāua,  
  by us two ("")

Nom.  ' o i māua,  
  we two (exclusive)
Gen.  o i māua,  
  of us two ("")
Dat.  mo i māua,  
  to us two ("")
Acc.  ia te i māua,  
  us two ("")
Abl.  e i māua,  
  by us two ("")

Plural

Nom.  ' o i tātou,  
  we (inclusive)
Gen.  o i tātou,  
  of us ("")
Dat.  mo i tātou,  
  to us ("")
Acc.  ia te i tātou,  
  us ("")
Abl.  e i tātou,  
  by us ("")
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>'o i mātou,</td>
<td>o i mātou,</td>
<td>mo i mātou,</td>
<td>ia te i mātou,</td>
<td>e i mātou,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wc (exclusive)</td>
<td>of us</td>
<td>to us</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>by us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SECOND PERSON SINGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>'o 'oe,</td>
<td>o 'oe,</td>
<td>mo 'oe,</td>
<td>ia te 'oe,</td>
<td>'e 'oe,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>thou</td>
<td>of thee</td>
<td>to thee</td>
<td>thee</td>
<td>by thee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dual**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>'o 'oulu'a,</td>
<td>o 'oulu'a,</td>
<td>mo 'oulu'a,</td>
<td>ia te 'oulu'a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you two</td>
<td>of you two</td>
<td>to you two</td>
<td>you two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you two</td>
<td>by you two</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>'o 'outou,</td>
<td>o 'outou,</td>
<td>mo 'outou,</td>
<td>ia te 'outou,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>of you</td>
<td>to you</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Often *tou* is substituted for *'outou* and *hua* for *'oulu'a* at the pleasure of the speaker, presumably for euphonic reasons.

**THIRD PERSON**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>'o ia',</td>
<td>o i lāua,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he she, it</td>
<td>they two</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The declension is exactly similar to that of the first person. In regard to the second person, the singular, *'o 'oe*, is used when speaking to a single individual, and not the second person plural, as in English.

If *so* or *sa* is placed before a personal pronoun in the dual and plural it signifies *one of*. Ex.: *so tātou,* one of us; *so lātou,* one of them.

The Samoan has a peculiar mode of expression which is foreign to all other kindred languages, and consists in conveying the thoughts or acts of two different persons by
the dual, and, should more than two people be alluded to, by the plural. This idiosyncrasy is best illustrated by one or two examples. Ex.: I and the father is not rendered by 'o a'u ma le tamā, but by 'o i māua ma le tamā, which means, we two and the father. I stay with you (two), 'ua tātou te nonofo ma i māua; literally, we stay with us together. Will you go with the chief? lua te ə ea ma le alii nei? The answer would be, Yes, I am going with him; ona tali ai lea 'o ia: ma te ə. Will you go with me? pe e te fia sau tā te ə? Yes, I am going with Joe, tā te ə.

Curious modes of expression such as the above often occur and add somewhat to the difficulty of the language, but reading will soon accustom one to them. 'Ua 'ou te (nofo) ia te 'oulua can be rendered, I stay with you (two); but this way of using it is not very often heard.

The formation of the possessive pronoun is much the same. If it is desired to convey the idea of being with anyone, as, for example, "The child is with me," the pronoun is placed between 'o and le of the article. It would not be correct to say, 'o le tama e ia te a'u, but, e 'o ia te a'u le tama. Ex.: pe e 'o ia te 'outou le tagata? e leai, e le 'i'i nei 'o ia!, is the man with you? no, he is not here.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

The possessive pronouns are formed from the corresponding personal pronouns by placing them before the respective definite articles and omitting the e of the article and the 'o of the pronouns. Ex.: 'o o'u, or 'o a'u, I.

Le 'o o'u = lo'u; le'o a'u = la'u, my
Se o'u = so'u; se a'u = sa'u, my (one of mine)

Lota, or lata, my, is seldom come across.
The rest of the possessive pronouns are:
SINGULAR

Lōu, lāu, thine (seldom, lo o’e, la’oe)
Lona, lana, his
Lo tāua, our (two) (inclusive; dual). Lo māua, la māua (exclusive; dual)
Lo tātou, our (inclusive; plural)
Lo mātou, our (exclusive; plural)
Lo ’oulua, la ’oulua, your (two) (dual)
Lo ’outou, la ’outou, your (plural)
Lo lāua, la lāua, their (two) (dual)
Lo lātou, la lātou, their (plural)

PLURAL

O’u, a’u, my
Ou, au, thy
Ona, ana, his
O, or a māua, our (dual)
O, or a tātou, our (inclusive; plural)
O, or a mātou, our (exclusive; plural)
O, or a ’oulua, your (dual)
O, or a ’outou, your (plural)
O, or a lāua, their (dual)
O, or a lātou, their (plural)

The forms so’u and sa’u are very rarely used. But of those given above with an optional o or a sound, such as lo’u, lōu, lo ’oe, it will be found that the use of the o is more customary. Ex.: o’u mata, my eyes.

The forms lo tāua, lo tātou are only used when the person addressed is included. Ex.: In speaking to several people who are in the same house with me, I might say: ’ua lelei lo tātou fale, our house is beautiful; but if I used the same phrase to a person in the opposite house, I should say: ’ua lelei lo mātou fale. If the same remark were made to only one person, who was with me in my house, it would be: ’ua lelei lo tāua fale, our (both) house is beautiful.

Possessive pronouns always precede the words they accompany. Ex.: lo mātou tama; lona avā (wife); ona uso (brothers), etc.
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

SINGULAR

'o lenei, this
'o lea, lena, that
'o lea lava, that (of), the one

PLURAL

ia, nei, these
na, those
nalava, those (of)

'O lea lava does duty as an answer: Yes; all right; very good.

The demonstrative pronouns can be employed substantively and adjectively. In the first case they stand alone, and in the latter before the word with which they are used. Ex.: 'o l'ou ata'lli lena, that is my son; 'ou te le iloa lava lea tagata, I do not know this man; i lenei itu, on this side; i lea aso ma lea aso, on this day and that day (every day, daily).

The word nei, this, is often strengthened by the addition of 'o i látou nei, but this is only used substantively. All this is translated by nei mea 'uma, literally, these things all.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

These are:

'O le, who, which
'O e, which (plural)

Their use is a little complicated, and best demonstrated by a few examples.

In many cases the relative pronoun is not employed, the reason being that the Samoan is averse to the dependent sentence. If he wished to say: "The man whom I have seen," he would put it thus: 'o le tamâloa na iloa 'o au, which is, literally, the man have seen I (na denotes the perfect tense; iloa, seen).
'O le tama sa nofo i le fale, the child stayed in the house; meaning, the child who stayed in the house.

'Ua sau mai le tasi tagata ia te a'u 'ua fa'apea mai ia te a'u, there came a man to me, has so (said) to me, which to me said. (Sau, come; fa'apea, thus, so); fa'apea mai, spoke thus.)

This mode of expression, however, only applies:

(a) If the relative pronoun, in the cases cited, is used as an adjective dependent upon a noun;

(b) And if the dependent sentence is in the nominative, or accusative, case in English. In the latter instance the passive form of the verb would be used, but this will be dealt with in its proper place.

Should the relative pronoun be used substantively, the following is the usual form adopted:

Ex. : 'ua aumai 'o i latou ia te ia 'o ē 'ua mama'i, they brought to him those who were sick ('o ē, those who).

If the demonstrative pronoun, that, in English, should be placed in the nominative, the same rule will apply in Samoan. Ex. : ia e avatu i le 'ua 'ole ia te o'e, give to him that has asked of you (i le, to him that).

When the relative pronoun is in the genitive, of that, the possessive pronoun is used in the apodosis, and that of the corresponding person to the subject in the principal sentence. Ex. : 'o le alii 'ua tele lona fale, literally is, the chief, (it) is big his house, whose house big is.

If the relative pronoun, which, in an English sentence takes the position of a nominative or genitive, or, in conjunction with a preposition, forms a direct sentence, at its close i 'ai, or ai, to which, whom, to whom, is used. Ex. : 'o le tama na 'ou avatu le pule i 'ai, the boy to whom I gave the shell; 'o le 'ai 'ua nofo ai le tupu, the town in which the
king lives; 'o le fagu 'ua iai le u'u, the bottle in which oil (is); 'o le tagata 'ua e avatua iai le tupe e le tupu, the man to whom money has been given by the king.

Note that no comma is used between the principal and subordinate sentence.

It would be well to remember these two rules in regard to the treatment of relative sentences:

(a) In Samoan when they are employed adjectivally a direct sentence results;

(b) When employed substantively, 'o le, who, is the usual form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.  'o le, he who, she who</td>
<td>Nom.  'o ë, those who, those which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.  {o le,} of him who, of her who</td>
<td>Gen.  {o ë,} of those who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.  i le, to him who, to her who</td>
<td>Dat. and Acc. i ë, to those who (dat.), those who (acc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.  i le, him who, her who</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.  'o le —lona, he whose</td>
<td>Nom.  'o ë —ona, those whose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.  {o le} —lona, of him (or her) whose</td>
<td>Gen.  {o ë} —ona, of those whose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.  i le —lona, to him whose</td>
<td>Dat.  i ë —ona, to those whose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.  i le —lona, him whose</td>
<td>Acc.  i ë —ona, those whose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In the foregoing all the possible variations of the relative pronoun that can occur are given, but to gain facility in their use the reading of native newspapers and books is recommended.

In the event of the relative pronoun, *he who* in English, being wished to convey the meaning of *if anyone*, or *everyone who*, it is not correct to use *'o lē*, but *ai se*, or *'o se*, *everyone who*. To illustrate this a quotation from the Bible will serve. *Ex.*: *'o ia se fai atu foi i lona uso Raka e nofo sala *'o ia i le fono*, anyone who says to his brother, Raka, shall be guilty at the Judgment (*fai atu*, say; *e*, a particle used in the conjugation of the verb; *nofo sala*, be guilty, in danger of; *fono*, judicial sitting, council). The pronoun, *'o ia*, in the relative sentence, is only made use of to emphasize, or strengthen, the relative pronoun, *ai se*. This is one of the features of the language and often done, but there is no special rule that can be applied in all cases. *Ex.*: *'o le tagata na tā *'o ia ia te 'au*, the man who struck me, can also be expressed by: *'o le tagata na tā ia te 'au*. Everyone who, *'o tagata 'uma . . . *'o e . . .*, the actual meaning being, all (men) who . . .
INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

'O ai, who?

Ex.: 'o ai ea 'oe?, who art thou? (ea, perhaps; literally, who, perhaps, art thou?)

O ai, whose

Ex.: o ai e ona tama?, whose is the child?

Ia te ai, to whom?

Ex.: 'ua e avatu 'o 'oe le tusi ia te ai?, to whom have you given the book?

'O ia na (the na being a particle), whom?

Ex.: 'o ai tou te saili na?, whom are you looking for?

Mai ia te ai, from whom?
E ai, through whom?
Ia te ai, by which? by what means?
Ini a, with which? with what?
'O le ā, what?

Ex.: 'o leā lea mea, what is that? 'o leā ea lou ma'i, what is your (singular) illness?

There is a plural to 'o le ā, viz., ni a, which is used to express what (sort of) things? Ex.: ni a ea ni mai i lo 'outou nu'u?, what is there in your country?—literally, what sort of things are in your country? (ni, some, any, is used here as a noun denoting an indefinite quantity); 'o ai se tagata?, which man?

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

Le tasi, each other, one another (before accompanying word)
Isi, nisi, nai, ni, some, or a few (before)
Se tasi, le tasi, se ina, anyone (before)
Ta' itasi, each, everyone (before)
Ai se tasi, le tasi, se tasi, someone, anybody (before)
E leai se, e leai se tasi, nobody (not —— anybody) (before)
'Uma, taitasi 'uma, all (plural) (after the accompanying word) 
Le leai se tasi, not a single one (before) 
Toatele, many (after) 
Toaitiiti, few (after) 
'O isi —— e sili, several 
'O isi, the rest, remainder (before)

These pronouns are capable of becoming nouns as well as adjectives. Ex.: nai i'a, a few fish; nu'u 'uma, all people; tagata 'uma, all men; 'o tagata e toatele, many men; 'o mea e tele, much; 'o mea itiiti, little; 'o isi 'au 'auna e sili, several men-servants; 'o isi tagata, the rest of the men.

It will be seen by these examples that the indefinite pronoun is mostly to be found directly following the attendant word, and but seldom preceding it. 'O isi —— e sili has the word it accompanies between isi and e as indicated.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

The Samoan has no actual word for self. He almost always translates it by employing the accusative case of the subject with the corresponding personal pronoun, followed by the word lava. Ex.: ina faa'ola ia o'e iate 'oe lava, help thyself; 'ua fasiote 'o ia ia te ia lava, he has killed himself. But the latter can equally mean, he has killed him.

By one's self (of one's own accord) is rendered by fua in the following manner: 'o le mea 'ua tupu fua, the matter that originates from itself.

There is also a reflexive form of the verb, which will be considered later.

THE VERB

The Samoan verb differs considerably in its conjugation from that of any European language; in fact, it cannot be
said to have a conjugation at all. It always remains unvaried in the singular, and only in the plural is there any alteration of form, introduced purely for purposes of embellishment, for which no hard and fast rules can be laid down. No terminations to denote person or tense are used. The moods are formed by adverbs, which precede the root-word when necessary.

The plural formation of the verb is not easy to acquire, but the close study of Samoan reading matter will greatly help in this respect. The following hints may be of some little assistance to this end.

Most verbs of one or two syllables reduplicate the first one, such as, *fe*fe* (frighten)—*fe*fe*fe*; *no*fo (sit, stay)—*no*no*fo*, etc.

Others do not vary in the plural, but the accent falls on the syllable preceding that of the singular form. *Ex.*: *ma*na*tu* (think, resolve upon)—*ma*na*na*tu* (plural).

A great number place *fe* before the verb and affix the particles *'i*, *fi*, *ni*, *si*, *fa'i*, *ma'i*, *na'i*, *va'i*, *tani*. These represent the remains of words, the meanings of which have been lost to the language. Those in most use are, *fe* — *si*, *fe* — *i*, and *fe* — *ni*; such are: *tautala* (speak)—*fetautala'i*; *tagi* (weep for)—*fetagisi*; *soli* (trample on)—*fesoli'ai*; *iloa* (see)—*feiloa'i*, etc.

Others, too—but almost invariably those that carry the accent on the antepenultimate—reduplicate the last syllable but one, as: *mālo*si—*mālo*losi; *fānau* (give birth)—*fanānau*; *gāhue* (work)—*galūlue*.

The penultimate syllable can also be reduplicated in composite verbs, as, for instance, *tāumafa* (feed)—*taumāmafa*.

A few lose a syllable in the plural, but these are mostly verbs that have already been reduplicated.
Ex. : lagilagi (sing.)—lalagi ; talatala—tatala ; tatala—talu.

Some are irregular : alu (go)—ō (plural) ; momo'e (run)—femo'ei (seldom used), or taufetuli ; nono (bind)——noati, also noatia ; sau (come)—ē.

As already pointed out, the methods adopted to form the plural of a verb are mostly attributable to the native desire to beautify the language by embellishments, and mistakes are bound to be made by the beginner when first attempting to converse in Samoan.

The principal neuter verbs, with their plurals, are :

aga, do, act, fe'aga'i
alaga, cry, call out, alalaga
alofoa, love, alolofa
a'quina, send, fa'auina
'au, swim, fe'ausi
anapogi, fast, abstain from, anapopagi
'ata, laugh, fe'atani
atama'i, be prudent, wise, atamama'i
fagu, wake, fafagu
fânau, bring forth, bear, fanânau
fāsi, strike, kill, fafasī
fese, be frightened, fese fese
filēmū, be silent, quiet, fitīfilēmū
fōlā, spread, extend, fofola
fui, immerse, dip, fufui
gālue, work, galūlue
goto, sink, go down, gogoto
'ili, blow, 'ili
iloa, see, understand, feiloai, or iola
inu, drink, feinu
ita, be angry, ita
lagu, weave, lalaga
lagilagi, warm, lagagi
lata, be near, fetata'i
lele, fly, felele'i
leo, call out, watch, leleo
liu, accost, apply to, feliu'i
mā, be ashamed, mamā
maliu, come, go, kill, maliliu
mālosi, be strong, malōlosi
ma'i, be ill, mama'i
manao, wish, mananao
manatu, think, mānātu
matua, be old, matutua
matā'u, be afraid, matatā'u
mate, die, pass away, mamate
meme, be anxious, puzzled, fememe'i
misa, fight, quarrel, femisa'i
moe, sleep, femoe'i, or momoe
moli, accuse, testify, momoli
musu, have no inclination, femusua'i
nofo, sit, remain, stay, nonofo
'ofu, dress, clothe, o'ofo
'o'o, reach to, continue, fe'o'oi
oso, spring, feoso'ī
oti, die, ooti
pa'ū, fall, pa'ū'ū
pese, sing, pepepese
poto, be wise, popoto
pu'e, seize, pupu'e
punou, bend, punonou
saga, turn aside, fesaga'i
saili, look for, sailitī
sauni, prepare, saununi
savali, travel, savāvali
soli, tread, step, fesolo'i
sui, take someone's place, deputise, fesui
tagi, weep, fetagisi
tag, lay hold, fetagosi
tanu, bury, tanatu
taoto, lie down, lay, put, taoto
\(\text{ta'u}\), relate, tell, ta'ui
\(\text{tautala}\), relate, fetautala'i
\(\text{tō}\), build, plant, tōi
\(\text{toe}\), be left, remaining, totoe
tofoi, divide, share, totofoi
toji, throw, fetoji
tolo, slink, steal away, fetolofoi
tū, stand, tutū
tu'i, sting, prick, tutu'i
tuli, hunt, chase, tutuli
tumu, fill, tutumu
tupu, arise, grow, increase, tutupu
tusa, equal, tutusa
tu'u, let, permit, grant, tutu'u
\(\text{u}\), bite, feutia
'uma, end, terminate, fe'umai
\(\text{umi}\), be long, tall, umi
\(\text{vale}\), be dull, stupid, vavale
\(\text{vai}\), see, vavai
\(\text{vi}\), praise, vīvī

In those verbs compounded of \(\text{fa'a}\) the plural formation is found in the verb-root and does not affect \(\text{fa'a}\). Ex.: \(\text{fa'atumu}\) (fill)—\(\text{fa'atutumu}\) (plural); \(\text{fa' a' ofu}\) (clothe)—\(\text{fa' a' o 'ofu}\) (plural).

**Active Form**

In forming the present tense it must be borne in mind that, if the personal pronoun stands before the verb, the euphonic particle, \(\text{te}\), is inserted between them. The third person singular is the only one in which it is omitted.

\(\text{Nofo}\) (to sit, stay) will serve as a pattern by which to conjugate it.

**The Present Tense**

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'ou</td>
<td>te nofo</td>
<td>I sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>nofo, or e nofo 'oe</td>
<td>thou sittest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e nofo 'o ia</td>
<td></td>
<td>he sits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dual**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mā te nonofo, or e nonofo i māua</td>
<td>we both sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūa te nonofo, or e nonofo i 'oulua</td>
<td>you both sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lā te nonofo, or e nonofo i lāua</td>
<td>they both sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mātou</td>
<td>te nonofo, or e nonofo i mātou</td>
<td>we sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tātou</td>
<td>te nonofo, or e nonofo i tātou</td>
<td>you sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lātou te nonofo, or e nonofo i lātou</td>
<td>they sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rules

1. The pronouns can be placed either before or after the verb, with the exception of the first person singular, which always precedes it.

2. If the pronoun stands after the verb, in all persons an e is placed before the verb.

3. The shortened form of the pronouns is mostly made use of before the verb: 'ou, instead of 'o a'u, mā, lua, lā, tou.

4. In place of the third person singular—e nofo 'o ia—it is quite correct to say 'o loo nofo, particularly if it is wished to indicate a condition existing at the time of speaking.

The present tense is used a great deal in Samoan, more especially in narration. The particle 'ua will constantly be found in attendance upon the intransitive verb at the beginning of a sentence, although it is devoid of any real meaning. When accompanying transitive verbs it denotes the perfect tense. Ex.: 'ua e nofo 'o ia, he sits; 'ua tā 'o ia ia te ia, he has struck him.

THE IMPERFECT TENSE

This is formed by placing the particle sa, or na, before the pronoun and verb. Ex.: sa 'au alaga, I cried. The euphonic te and e of the present tense are omitted, however, otherwise the conjugation is nearly the same.

Singular

Na, or sa 'ou nofo, I sat
Na, or sa e nofo, thou sattest
Na, or sa ia nofo, he sat
Dual
Na, or sa mā nonofo, or nonofo i māua, we both sat
The other persons are as those in the present tense, but without te and e.

Plural
Na, or sa mātou alalaga, or alalaga i mātou, we cried, etc.

The imperfect is not employed to the extent the present tense is.

THE PERFECT TENSE

This is quite simply constructed. Except for the particle 'ua, it is indistinguishable from the imperfect
Ex.: 'ua 'ou saili, I have looked for. If detached from the context, or used as another part of speech in the same sentence, the particle 'ua does not go to form the perfect tense, and must, in these circumstances, be left out.

Singular
'Ua 'ou nofo, I have sat, etc.

Dual
'Ua mā nonofo, we have both sat, etc.

Plural
'Ua mātou nonofo, we have sat, etc.

THE FUTURE TENSE

The future is almost identical with the present tense, both as applied to form and meaning. In some parts of the Samoan group an e is placed before the pronoun in the plural. Ex.: e matou te ō, we will go; or, e ō i mātou, which is exactly similar to the present tense.

This form of the future, though, is only used when it is understood that a future action is intended. Should the action be a definitely future one, there is another way of
expressing it by introducing 'o le ā (not to be confounded with 'o le ā, what?). Ex.: 'o le ā 'ou sau, I will (certainly) come; or, I shall come.

The conjugation is a double one, and we will use the word sau (come) as a model, since this can readily lead to confusion in its plural construction, and the learner will be able to accustom himself more easily to the mode of conjugation by taking this verb as a pattern.

**Singular**

'ō le ā 'au sau, or ā 'au sau, I will come
'ō le ā e sau, or 'ō le ā sau 'oe, thou wilt come
'ō le ā sau 'o ia, he will come

**Dual**

'ō le ā māō, or 'ō le ā ā i māua, we will both come
'ō le ā luaō, or 'ō le ā ā i 'ouluua, you will both come
'ō le ā lāō, or 'ō le ā ā i lāua, they will both come

**Plural**

'ō le ā māō, or 'ō le ā ā i māua (exclusive) } we will come
'ō le ā tāō, or 'ō le ā ā i tāō (inclusive) } you will come
'ō le ā 'ouluuō, or 'ō le ā ā i 'ouluu, you will come
'ō le ā tāō, or 'ō le ā ā i tāō they will come

This form of the future tense is often in use, particularly in writing the language, but the Samoan, as a rule, prefers the one first given, because it involves less trouble.

**THE OPTATIVE MOOD**

The optative is a variation of the imperative mood, which has the effect of giving the latter a more agreeable and gentle form, and is best rendered into English by *I beg, I pray, please*. In Samoan it is expressed by se'i, with the verbal form concerned, which denotes the person, omitted. Ex.: se'i e malolō ai!, rest, I beg!; se'i 'ou alu, please let me go; se'i 'ou taofi ia te 'oe, I beg that I may restrain you (hold you back).
THE IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE

This is effected by the use of 'aua (lest), which can be reinforced by ne'i. The euphonic particles, e te, are also introduced between the auxiliary and the verb, if it is wished to convey the idea of forbiddance to a single person. Should several be referred to, the bare verb is employed. Ex.: 'aua e te pisa tele, do not make a noise! nofo pea 'aua e te alu, stay (there), and do not go away! 'aua nei fasioti, you (plural) shall not kill!

Although the command in the Bible is, 'aua gaoi, thou shalt not steal—using the second person singular of the pronoun—it is intended to apply to all people. Here is an example: 'ua fa'alogofoi 'outou, na fai mai i e anamua, 'aua e te tauto pepelo; a 'ou te fai atu a'u ia te 'outou, 'aua lava ne'i tauto; you have heard what was said to the forefathers; thou shalt not swear (tauto, swear) (pepelo, lie), but I say to you, swear not at all (lava, at all).

Leave off!, Stop !, is translated by soia, with the same construction as 'aua. Ex.: soia e te tā!, stop fighting!

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

The subjunctive mood, as we know it, is rare in Samoan. It is represented by the particle ana, and the verb following it corresponds exactly to the form of the mood and tense required. Ex.: ana e i 'inei, were thou here, then . . . The sentence following—the apodosis—will be accompanied by po. Ana ilōa e 'outou 'oa'u!, if you know me . . . (ilōa is here passive and the sentence literally reads: if known by you, I).

THE INFINITIVE MOOD

The infinitive is composed of the bare verb with e placed in front of it. Ex.: e alu, go: in order to go.
'Ua alu 'o ia e vaai le va'a, he came in order to see the ship. A can also be substituted for e: a alu, go.

THE PARTICIPLE

Participles in the Samoan language are rather rare. One form has already been discussed when dealing with the present tense: 'o loo nofo, 'o loo taoto, etc., where their use is explained. In cases where in English one would say while and when, the Samoan simply uses the particle, o. Ex.: 'o i lātou o fesili le ali'i, ona ō ai lea 'o savali, while they questioned the chiefs, the messengers came (ona — ai lea, then, in the latter part of the sentence).

The negative of a verb is effected by the word le, which is always placed immediately before it. Ex.: 'ou te le īloa, I do not know.

THE PASSIVE FORM

The term "Passive" is really not an appropriate one, for there is actually no distinction in Samoan between the active and passive verb. Both forms are used indiscriminately.

The construction of the passive form is a very variable one, and nine different particles play their part in it. They are: a, ia, ina, fia, gia, lia, mia, sia, and tia. These are survivals of words whose meaning has long been lost. The use of these particles is partly attributable to a desire for euphony and partly depends upon their etymological foundation, which it is not necessary to go into here. The Samoan mostly uses the termination ina. (Termination is hardly the right description. Pratt, in his Samoan Grammar—now out of print—calls them "Deponent Verbs.")
He will not be guilty of any gross error if the learner employs *ina* in the great majority of cases. The following is a list of verbs with their passive forms, and it will be seen that:

1. All compound verbs, almost without exception, have their termination in *ina*; such as *faitauina* (also *faitaulia*), *fa'amagaloina*, etc.

2. The verbs ending in *i* almost throughout take *a* in the passive: *tulia*, *fusia*, *fasiotia*.

3. Those ending in *a*, *o*, *u* have mostly *mia*, *sia*, *tia* in their passive form: *inumia*, *fonotia*, *tanumia*.

It is advisable for the student to learn the formation of the passive verbs through the medium of Samoan writings or a native newspaper.

The various tenses of the passive are formed in precisely the same way as those of the active verb.

### Present Tense

- *e alofaina 'o a'ū*, I am loved
- *e alofaina 'o 'oe*, thou art loved
- *e alofaina 'o ia*, he is loved, etc.

### Imperfect

- *na alofaina 'o a'ū*, I was loved, etc.

### Perfect

- *'ua alofaina 'o 'au*, I have been loved, etc.

### Future

- *ā 'au alofaina*, or *'o leā alofaina 'o 'au*, I shall be loved
- *'o leā alofaina 'o 'oe*, thou shalt be loved, etc.

The pronoun can also be placed, of course, before the verb. There is no participle.

The use of the passive verb will be referred to subsequently, when dealing with the construction of sentences.
alofa, love, —gia, —ina
'apama, begin, —ina
aowi, command, —ina
a'oa'o, teach, —ina
ati, build, —ina
au, send, —ina
avuai, bring, —a
awatu, give, —a
ave, take, —a (when standing alone; following mai, or atu, —ina)
ave'ese, take away, —a
'eli, dig, —a
fa'aee, lay, put, place, —tia
fa'aete'i, thank, —a
fa'afo'i, send back, —sia
fa'a'ainu, to make drunk, —a
fa'a'aititi, draw off, —a
fa'amalosi, strengthen, —a
fa'asala, punish, —ina
fafa'aga, nourish, support, —ina
fai, do, happen, —a
fai'a, count, read, —lia
fana, bear, give birth, —a, —ina
fasi, strike, hit, fight, —a
fasioti, kill, —a
feta'a, speak, —a
fetuu, curse, swear, —ina
filifili, choose, elect, —a
foai, deliver up, hand over, —ina
folo, gulp down, swallow, —ina
fono, judge, sit in judgment, —tia
fua, measure, weigh, —tia
fusi, bind, —a
gau, break to pieces, —a, —sia
'iti, blow, —a
'ino, hate, —sia
inu, drink, —mia
isitua, divide, share, —ina
lafo, throw, or cast away, —a, —ina
lafotu, throw, throw to and fro, —ina
laga, weave, —ina
laveai, help, save, rescue, —ina
laulau, put before, prepare (of food), —a, —ina
lilo, conceal, hide —ia,
litu, turn (about), —a, —ina
(maligia, spill, shed, pour, —ina
mau, win, gain, —a, —ina
miti, suck, —ia
moli, accuse, testify, —a
mu, burn, —ina
nania, bury, —tia
nonoa, tie, —tia
nutipala, bruise, squash, —ina
'ofu, dress, clothe, —ina
'ole, cheat, deceive, —olegia
osi, conclude an alliance, sacrifice, —a
pu'e, seize, grasp, —a, —ina
puni, shut, close, —tia
sae, tear, rend, —ia
saili, seek, look for, —a
sasa, beat, whip, —ina
sasa'a, pour out, —ina
saua, oppress, harass, —ina
sauni, cook, prepare, —a
sesi, lead astray, —ina
sit, raise, lift, —tia
sila, see, —fia
sio, surround, —mia, —ina
sopo, transgress, exceed, —ia
sua, thrust, push, —tia
sui, sew, stitch, —a
susunu, burn down, —ina
tafuna, devastate, lay waste, —ina
tagi, weep (for, over), —sia
tago, touch, handle, —fia
ta'ita'i, lead, guide, —ina
tala'i, tell, relate, narrate, —ina
tali, receive, accept, —a
tanu, bury, —mia
taofi, trust, give employment (to), —ina
tatala, open, —ina
taui, pay, —a
tausti, nurse, take care of, —a
teu, adorn, —a
tigia, hurt, grieve, —ina
to, plant, —ina
The Medium Form

By medium is meant a third form of the verb, which is not so often met with in other Polynesian languages as in Samoan, where it forms quite a feature. The syllable fe is placed in front of the verb, and, for euphonic purposes, the following particles are employed after it: a'i, fa'i, ni, sa'i, ta'i, ma'i, na'i. It will be seen that these impart a reciprocal, intensive, or retrospective meaning to the action of the verb. Ex.: fesoasoani, help one another; fefolafolaoa'i, turn over in one's mind, rack one's brains; fetautalatala a'i, converse one with another; fealofani, love one another, mutually love; 'o 'outou fealofani, love one another.

The medium mood also occasionally expresses a repetition or continuity of action. Ex.: femaliuva'i, dwell upon, reflect upon (from maliu, go); fealua'i, turn about (from alu, go; plural, feoā'a'i).

IRREGULAR VERBS

There are only two of these, viz., fā, to think erroneously, be mistaken, and galo, to have forgotten. These
two words enter largely into the life of the Samoan, and invariably serve as an excuse when he makes a promise to do a thing and promptly forgets all about it afterwards. The conjugation, which is simple, is:

\[
\text{fā i } tā \text{ (faita), or } fā \text{ } \text{au } \text{mai, I thought wrongly, or mistakenly } fā \text{ } \text{'oe, or } fā \text{ } \text{ī } \text{'oe, thou thoughtest, etc.}
\]

\[
fā \text{ } \text{te } \text{ia, he thought, etc.}
\]

The rest of it is regular—\( e \text{ } \text{fā i } \text{mātou, we thought, etc.} \)

\[
\text{'ua } \text{galo } \text{ia } \text{te } \text{'}\text{au, I forgot (literally—"it was missing (lost) to me")}
\]

\[
\text{'ua } \text{galo } \text{ia } \text{te } \text{'}\text{oe, thou forgottest}
\]

\[
\text{'ua } \text{galo } \text{ia } \text{te } \text{ia, he forgot, etc.}
\]

**THE AUXILIARY VERBS**

There are no actual verbs in Samoan that correspond to *be* and *have* in European languages. They are rendered by the aid of verbal particles.

If the verb *to be* is employed alone between the subject and object of a sentence it is not expressed. *Ex.*: \( u'\text{a tele le fale, the house is big; 'o Mataafa 'o le alii sili o Samoa 'o ia, Mataafa is the paramount chief of Samoa. Should the verb to be, on the other hand, be used in an impersonal way in the sense of there is, there are, then it would be expressed by the adverb } \text{i ai (there), with the suitable verbal particle.} \)

\[
e \text{i ai, there is}
\]

\[
sa, or na \text{i ai, there was (once there was)}
\]

\[
\text{'ua leai se . . . , or e leai se, there is not}
\]

With regard to the verb *to have*, the Samoan expresses it as follows:

(1) He puts the subject in the accusative and the object in the nominative. This is the nearest approach he
can attain to it. *Ex.: 'ua ia te ia le auaua*, he has a man-servant (literally, *to him (is) a man-servant*); *'ua ia te a'u le a'u uso e toalua*, I have two brothers (for *'o le 'au*, see THE NOUN). This turn of speech is very much used when it can be done suitably. In Malayan the same form of sentence is met with in: *ada satu kuda sama sahaja*, I have a horse.

(2) The verb *to have* is represented by *i ai, e i ai*, or simply *e*. If the subject is a pronoun it is not expressed, otherwise it remains in the nominative. The main point is that the appropriate possessive pronoun must be placed before the object. *Ex.: 'o le tagata lenei e toalua ona atalii, this man has two sons (literally, *this man (are) two his sons*); e iai sau totogi, thou hast money; *'ua ia te ia lona fale*, he has a house.

(3) If the negative form of *be and have* is desired, the adverb *i ai* is left out and *leai* substituted. *Ex.: 'ua leai ni a tātou areto, we have no bread (literally, *there is nothing of our bread*); 'ua leai se a (sā) latou āva, they have no "kava" (a cooling drink).*

*To be obliged* (must), *to have to* (shall), *to be allowed*, etc., will be referred to when considering the formation of sentences.

THE COMPOUND VERBS

The Samoan is fond of employing bombastic expressions, which are, at the same time, simple, and it often happens that out of several words he devises a single one, or seeks to strengthen the meaning of a word by reduplication of certain syllables. Especially is this the case with verbs.
(1) Reduplication, such as that found in *silasila*,
*totofoto*, *su'esu'e*, implies a reinforcing, or emphasising, of
the action concerned. *Su'e*, ask, question; *su'esu'e*,
make enquiries, investigate, examine; *tala*, speak; *talatala*, relate, chatter.

(2) *Taufai* . . . indicates the longer continuity of an
action. *Ex.: tagi*, weep; *taufaitagi*, lament, mourn, long for.

(3) *Mā*, before a verb, signifies can, able to: *māga-gana*, able to speak, talk; *māfai*, able to make, do. *If le*
precedes *mā* we get the negative form. *Ex.: le māfai*,
unable to make, do.

(4) *Ta'a* is used when passing judgment upon a person
or thing. *Ex.: ta'u'ufa 'atauva'a*, to esteem one little;
*ta'uamiatonu*, to defend, vindicate someone.

(5) The verbs formed with *fai* indicate activity. *Ex.:*
*faimasae*, patch, repair; *fai mai, fai atu*, order something
to be done.

(6) Those verbs compounded of *fa'a* occur most
frequently. This word evidently must in earlier times
have conveyed the meaning of have, cause, but it is never
now used independently. In the formation of these words
the speaker expresses action, and it will therefore be seen
that an intransitive verb is transformed into a transitive
by the use of this prefix. *Ex.: moe*, sleep; *fa'amoe*,
lull one to sleep; *tusa*, resemble; *fa'atusa*, compare;
and so on. In a great many cases these words formed with
*fa'a* have lost their original signification, and in others they
have come to bear quite a different one. By prefixing
*fa'a*, the Samoan also often evolves verbs from nouns and
adjectives, and this sometimes entirely alters the meaning
of the original word. *Ex.: susu*, wet; *fa' usūsu*, to
make wet;  

*ta'ita'i*, guide;  

*fa' ata'ita'i*, convey, try;  

*tau*, wages, price;  

*fa'atau*, trade, buy, sell, etc.  

This species is of frequent occurrence, and now mostly bears the interpretation of the simple verb.  

(7) By joining the adverb *loa*, immediately, at once, to a verb it implies an instant action.  

*Ex.*:  

'ua avatuloa 'o *ia le tusi ia te ia*, he brought him the book at once.

(8) *Tino*, body, if postfixed to a verb appertaining to the senses, such as see, hear; etc., has the effect of intensifying the action in question.  

*Ex.*: *ilioatino*, know precisely, see clearly.

(9) The same word before the verb means *very*; *matuā* (very) only being used before adjectives and adverbs.

(10) The following six adverbs of direction, which have the effect of somewhat modifying the meaning, are often attached to the verb:  

*atu, ane, a'e, mai, ifo, and 'ese.*

*atu*, off, away, out (*from the person speaking*)  

*ane*, along  

*a'e*, up, up to  

*mai*, to, at (*towards the person speaking*)  

*IFO*, down, downwards  

*'ese*, away, forth

*Ex.*:  

'ou te alu *atu*, I go (out, off);  

'ua alu ane i le *vaitafe*, he went along the river;  

'ua alu a'e i le *mauga*, he went up the mountain;  

'ua fai mai 'o *ia ia te a'u*, he said to me;  

'ua alu *ifo 'o ia mai le mauga*, he came down the mountain;  

*alu 'ese!* , go away!;  

*fa'atau *atu*, to sell;  

*fa'atau mai*, to buy.

(11) *Fua*, following a verb, would be translated *self*, of itself, from itself, etc.  

*Ex.*:  

'o le mea 'ua tupu *fua*, the thing which originates from itself.

The use of the verbs will be gone into later.
The following verbs might be conjugated by way of practice to the student:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{tagi, weep, fetagisi} (plural)
  \item \textit{iloa, know, iloa} (plural)
  \item \textit{mata'ū, fear, mata'ala'ū} (plural)
  \item \textit{galue, work, galūlue} (plural)
  \item \textit{pā'u, fall, pa'ū'ā} (plural)
  \item \textit{tumu, fill, tutumu} (plural)
\end{itemize}

**THE NUMERALS**

Some of the Polynesian peoples, including the Australian negro, are, generally speaking, only capable of counting up to four. Anything after this number the Australian usually terms \textit{miribiri} (many), but this does not apply to the Samoan, who is highly cultured, and able to reckon up to ten thousand, having even several forms for the single number.

**THE CARDINAL NUMERALS**

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{e iasi}, one
  \item \textit{e lua}, two
  \item \textit{e tolu}, three
  \item \textit{e fā}, four
  \item \textit{e lima}, five
  \item \textit{e ono}, six
  \item \textit{e fitu}, seven
  \item \textit{e valu}, eight
  \item \textit{e iva}, nine
  \item \textit{e sefulu}, ten
  \item \textit{e sefulu ma le iasi}, eleven; and so on.
  \item \textit{e luasefulu}, or \textit{luafulu}, twenty
  \item \textit{e tolosefulu}, or \textit{tolufulu}, thirty
  \item \textit{e fosefulu}, or \textit{fagafulu}, forty
  \item \textit{e limasefulu}, or \textit{limagafulu}, fifty
  \item \textit{e ivasefulu}, or \textit{ivagafulu}, ninety
  \item \textit{e selau}, one hundred
  \item \textit{e luaselau ma le iasi}, two hundred and one
  \item \textit{e toloselau}, or \textit{tolutau}, three hundred
  \item \textit{e fāselau}, or \textit{fadalau}, four hundred
  \item \textit{e ivaselau}, or \textit{ivalau}, nine hundred
  \item \textit{e afe}, one thousand
  \item \textit{e lua afe}, two thousand
  \item \textit{e tolu afe}, or \textit{toluta afe}, three thousand
  \item \textit{e fā afe}, or \textit{faga afe}, four thousand
  \item \textit{e lima afe}, or \textit{limaga afe}, five thousand
  \item \textit{e mano}, ten thousand
\end{itemize}

Over ten thousand is expressed by \textit{manomano}.

1918 would be \textit{tasi le afe ivagalau ma le sefulu ma le valu}.
The Samoan has a great predilection for those numbers formed of ga.

In addition to the ones given above—all adjectivally used—there is a second numeral, used substantively, employing the prefixes to'a and to'atino. Ex.: to'alua, to'atinogafulu, to'alima. In bygone days these had the meaning of ever, which, however, no longer applies to-day. Both forms are now used indiscriminately.

The cardinal numbers almost always follow the words they apply to. Ex.: au mai ia ia te 'au pelu e lima (or to'alima), bring me five swords.

The cardinal numbers are invariable.

THE ORDINAL NUMERALS

These are formed by placing the definite article before the cardinal numbers. The first one alone is an exception to this rule: 'o le muamua, or 'o le ulua'i, the first; 'o le lua, the second; 'o le tolu, the third, etc.

The last, is 'o le mulimuli. As far as the position of the ordinals is concerned, it is as correct to say, 'o le lua fale, as 'o le fale lua; the latter being more generally used if the accompanying word is in another case than the nominative.

An exception should be noted in the enumeration of the months: 'o le u'ua'i māsina, the first month; 'o le lua māsina, the second month; 'o le toluga māsina, the third month; 'o le fāga māsina, the fourth month, and so on, until, 'o le ivaga māsina, the ninth month, after which gā is omitted; 'o le sefulu māsina, the tenth month, etc.
FRACTIONS

The word vaega (part) is the means by which these are distinguished, and it precedes the numeral. Ex.: 'o le vaega e fa, a quarter; 'o le vaega e tolu, a third; lua vaega e fitu, two-sevenths; afa, half (derived from the English word); vaelua, to halve; vaefā, to quarter; 'o le “insi” e lua ma le afa, or ma lona afa, two and a half inches.

MULTIPLICATION NUMERALS

These are formed by prefixing 'o le atu, or fa'a, to the cardinal number. Ex.: 'o le atufitu, the seventh time; fa'aono, six times; ina fai ia fa' atolu 'a i le atufitu foi . . . do this three times, at the fourth time, though . . . The difference in the use of the two prefixes will easily be noted in the above examples. By placing tai, or sāutua, before the cardinal numeral it conveys the meaning of “fold.” Ex.: taiono, sixfold; taiselau, a hundredfold; sautuatolu, threefold, triple. The last form does not often occur.

THE PREPOSITIONS

The most important of these are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ai, from, away</td>
<td>e ui ina mea, notwithstanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a o, during</td>
<td>e ui ina, in spite of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aone, along</td>
<td>fa'atasi, ma, with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ataoa ma, with, together with</td>
<td>i, in, at, to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e aunoa ma, without</td>
<td>i fafo, outside, out of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e by, through</td>
<td>i lalo, under, below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e lala aone, near, beside</td>
<td>i le va, between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e leai ma, without, except</td>
<td>i loto, in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e le lotoa, without, out of</td>
<td>i luga, over, above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e fesaga'i ma, opposite, against</td>
<td>i lumae, before, in front of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>felata'i mai, among</td>
<td>i tala atu, beyond, on the other side of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e o'o i, to, as far as (local word)</td>
<td>i tala mai, on this side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e sui a'i, instead of, for</td>
<td>i totonu, in, within</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e tusa ma, according to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WORD SYSTEM

39
The prepositions are always to be found in their complete form, are placed before the word they govern, and are invariable, but in conjunction with personal pronouns those compound prepositions formed with i constitute an exception, in that they take the suitable possessive pronoun between them. Ex.: *i lūma*, before, in front of; *lūma o le fale*, in front of the house; *lo'ū lūma*, before me; *ona tua*, behind him. The reason for this is that these prepositions are composed of *i*, in, and either a noun or an adverb. Ex.: *tua*, the behind part, back; *tua*, behind; *lona tua*, in his back, behind him.

The compound prepositions raise the question of where? where to?, and in both instances these take the genitive case after them. Ex.: *totonu o le ana*, in the cave, into the cave.

*Ane* and *lata ane* govern the accusative with *i*; *ma* and *mo* the dative, and the remainder the genitive.

**Examples**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Samoan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ai le lalolagi, from the earth</td>
<td>felata'i mai i mātonou, beneath us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ane i le vai, along the river</td>
<td>e lata ane ia te i lātonu, near them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atoa ma lona uso, with his brother</td>
<td>e o'o i le lāgi, to Heaven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ua iloa e ia'o a'u, I have been seen by him</td>
<td>'ua faia ma tupu o ia e sui a'i, he became king in his place (instead of him)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e le'ai ma lona avā, without his wife</td>
<td>e tusu ma le po'olaga, according to law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e fesaga'i ma le'ai, opposite the town</td>
<td>fa'atasi ma ia, with him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>i le va'a, in, or into, the ship</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adjectives can be used as adverbs without undergoing any change, and other parts of speech are also brought into requisition in forming them.

**ADVERBS OF PLACE**

i lalo, under, below  
ifo, down, downwards  
i le Itu tau matau, to the right, right (hand) side  
i le Itu tau agavale, to the left, left (hand) side  
'o fea, i fea, where, where to, where from?  
vinei 'o le mea nei, here  
lelā  
v'ila  
i'o  
'o le mea lea  
latalata, near, close to  
mamao, off, at a distance  
i tua, backwards  
imea'uma, everywhere, throughout  
i lei se mea, nowhere  
i lea mea ma lea mea, here and there  
i totonu, within  
i fafo, out of doors, outside  
i luga, above, aloft
ADVERBS OF TIME

afea, when?
nei, aso nei, now
loa, immediately
anamua, sooner, before
amuli, later
atoli, in future
analeilā, just, a short time ago
ananafi, yesterday
taeao, to-morrow
lua, the day after to-morrow
i le taeao, in the morning
vaveao, in the early morning
tua, late
leva, long, long ago
fa' afuase'i, suddenly, all of a sudden
so'o, often, frequently
i le afiafi po, in the evening

i, or o le po, by night
i, or o le aso, ao, morning (as opposed to night)
nanei, soon, shortly
soona, at haphazard
pea, still, continually
le'i, not yet
i lea aso ma lea aso, daily
i aso 'uma, always, ever
vave, quickly, swiftly
talu, since
se'ia afea, until when?; how long?
'ua māoae nisi aso ona . . .

after some time . .
seasea foi, when there is an opportunity, on occasion

OTHER ADVERBS

ioe, e, ci'ai, yes
e leai, no
le, not
toatele, much
itiiti, little
fa' apea, so, thus
e pei, how so?, how do you mean?

pe fa'apefea, how?
ai se a, why?
se a le mea, wherefore?, for what?
e moni, tc be sure, of course
fua, in vain, without foundation
peefia, how much?

CONJUNCTIONS

'ina 'ua, after
i le, and then
i le ma lea foi, besides, moreover
ma, and
e, to, in order to (infinitive)
e afua — e o'o atu, from — to —
'a lei, before
e aogā ina, e ao ina, it is necessary that . . .
e ui lava, yet, nevertheless
e le gata — po, neither — nor
e le gata ina — a, not only —
but also —
'aua lava na — a, not only —
but also
'ua in foi ina, after
'o le mea lea, therefore
ea, well? (question-particle)
ana, that though, that however (optative)
'o lenei, now though
e ui ine mea, however
As will be shown later, the construction of sentences in Samoan does not present any difficulty, and few dependent sentences ever occur in the language; for this reason the conjunctions are not used to any great extent.

WORDS ONLY USED WITH REFERENCE TO CHIEFS

The Polynesians have a number of words in their language which must only be made use of when addressing, or referring to, a chief, a divinity, or a person in an exalted position. These words, applied to ordinary mortals, are forbidden; their use would be considered a great breach of decorum, and the culprit guilty of it would be severely punished.

The following are those most generally employed:

Chief-word.

aao, hand, instead of lima
afio, come, instead of sau
afioga, speech, instead of upu
aisi, beg, pray, instead of ole
alo, child, instead of tama
ao, head, instead of 'ulu
fa'afafoga, hear, instead of fa'afofo
fa'amalou, bathe, instead of ta'ele

Chief-word

fa'apa'u, tattoo, instead of tata'u
fa'atafa, illness, instead of ma'i
faletuta, wife, instead of avā
finagalo, will, mind, instead of loto
fofofo, face, eyes, instead of mata
fotu, transmit, instead of fāna'au
gafa, sex, instead of tupulaga
SYNTAX AND RULES APPLYING TO IT

Almost all are direct and principal sentences in Samoan, subordinate and relative clauses being little met with. The construction of the sentence is simple, and consists of Subject, Predicate, and Object.

The subject almost invariably stands in the second place, after the predicate. Ex. : 'ua oti i lātou, they die. This comes about because very nearly every sentence commences with a particle, which is directly attached to the verb and cannot be separated from it. The first person singular of the personal pronoun 'ou almost always takes its place before the verb. Ex. : 'o a'u 'o Uila, a 'ou iia i le nu'u . . . I am Uila; if I be wrath with a country . . .

If the subject is a substantive, or a word employing the article 'o le, and itself stands before the predicate, it always has the complete article 'o le, which is not invariably the case when it appears after it. In both cases the article 'o is employed in the plural. Should an adjective accompany the subject, it is placed after it.

Numerals take their place before the subject.
The predicate does not always strictly conform to the subject in tense and mood. For instance, if the subject is in the singular the predicate following is also in the singular. Only after words which have a collective meaning is the plural used, such as: 'o le nu'u, the people; 'o le lafu, the flock, herd; 'o le fono, the council-meeting; 'o le ulugalii, the married couple; etc. Ex.: 'o le ulugalii sa nonofo i Falealupo, the married couple lived in Falealupo.

The dual number only represents two persons or things, and the plural form of the verb is the one that is most often used, but not always.

When the subject is in the plural the predicate follows also in the plural, but now and then it will be found in the singular. Whether this is only attributable to negligence, or is admissible, cannot be definitely ascertained, but it would certainly be best always to use the plural.

With regard to the position of the predicate in a sentence, this will readily be seen by reference to the remarks on the Verb.

The learner will find that his chief difficulty lies in the proper use of the mood, for the Samoan is not very particular in discriminating between the active and passive form of the verb: both are promiscuously and arbitrarily used by him. Passive forms with an active sense are frequently met with, and the reverse. It is, therefore, impossible to differentiate, from a grammatical point of view, between an active and passive verb. In the Selections for Reading at the end of the grammar both moods will be found, used in quite a promiscuous fashion. Ex.: na tusia foi e Malietoa 'o ia 'uma, na ia avatua foi tusi i alii 'uma, Malietoa wrote down all this, and then sent letters to all the Chiefs. Tusia and avatua are both passive forms: in the case of tusia it correctly applies, but in that
of *avatua* this verb has an active tendency. The subject, *ia*, is in the nominative, and the object, *tusi*, in the accusative: but it could also be rendered *na ia avatu tusi*, or *na avatu foi e ia tusi*. In this last instance it will be seen that *tusi* is nominative. *'Ua ia avatua tusi i Kovano*, he sent letters to the Governor. *Ia* is the subject, and in the nominative; *avatua*, the predicate, is passive, but employed actively; *tusi* is the accusative plural.

The manner in which they are used is quite irregular, and proves to be a stumbling-block to the learner when first he attempts the translation of Samoan into English and uses the corresponding forms of the verb. It is as well first to find the object in a sentence, then its case, after which it will be the more easily seen which mood of the verb is intended.

These double readings not only occur in the transitive verbs, such as *strike*, *kill*, etc., but, curiously enough, in the intransitive ones as well, which is worthy of note. *Ex.*: *'ua talia fo'i 'o ia*, he answered. The motive for this peculiar construction is, it is thought, to be found less in the etymology of the language than in the nature of the Samoan. A European who has, in the course of time, associated a good deal with a cultured Samoan, was told by the latter, with reference to this peculiarity of word-construction, that no rule existed to account for it, but that it was purely the result of individual inclination on the part of native speakers.

Where an active form of the verb would be used in an English sentence the Samoan would rather employ the passive one in his speech, particularly if the active were likely to give rise to any misconception. In general the passive plays a great part in Malayan-Polynesian languages. The subject takes the preposition *e* before it, the verb is in
its passive or active form, and the object in the nominative. Ex.: 'ua 'ai e Tapuitea 'o lona uso e itiiti, Tapuitea ate his little brother; 'ua fasia e i lātou 'o auaua i pelu, they struck the men-servants dead with swords. In the first example, 'ai is active, and in the second, fasia is passive.

If a present action is intended, the present tense with its appropriate participle must be used; and, for an action that is past, the imperfect and perfect. Besides these, the Samoan has a third form of denoting past action, which corresponds to our pluperfect tense, and signifies that an action was accomplished at the time that another began.

The following phrases will serve as an illustration:

Ex.:
a 'ua māvāe ona . . . ona . . .: a 'ua 'uma ona . . . ona . .

Ex.: a 'ua māvāe ona oti 'o ia, ona . . ., as he was dead though, then . . .; or, a 'ua 'uma ono fai . . . ona . . ., as that has been done, then . . .

Ona, in both sentences, is the adverb which occurs most frequently, but there is no word that will exactly convey its meaning. It is included once in almost every sentence, frequently at the beginning of it (as is the case also with the Malayan maka). This word must not be confounded with ona, his (see PRONOUNS). In place of the simple perfect, these forms can also be employed: 'ua 'uma ona alofa, I have loved; sa 'ou alofa ina 'na, I had loved. With regard to the use of the future tense, see THE VERB.

The future formed by 'o le ā has also occasionally the meaning of shall; otherwise, shall and must should be translated by tatau with the following construction: 'o le mea lea e le tatau ona fai, this must, or shall, not (be allowed to) happen. The actual meaning of tatau is, worthy, befitting, therefore the above sentence would properly
read: to do this is not befitting. Shall can further be expressed by matuā, very, which should precede the verb concerned. Ex.: e te matuā avatua lava le tusi ia te ia, you shall (are to) give him the book. Must is most easily rendered by e ao ina . . . : e ao ina 'ou, I must.

Similarly, māfai is construed can, and one could either say māfai ona, or lē māfai ona lē. Ex.: 'o ia māfai ona sau, he can come; or, 'o ia lē māfai ona lē sau, he can come; but the latter example obviously could not be used in a negative form. Ex.: 'o ia lē māfai ona sau, he cannot come. In a similar way, amata and afua denote begin: afua ona, begin from . . .

Let, leave, allow, leave off, etc., are rendered in two ways: soia, leave that!; let that alone!; soia e te tā, leave off fighting! stop fighting! Let (viz., allow) would be translated tu'u. Let, meaning let someone do a thing, is expressed by fai atu. Ex.: 'ua fai atu 'o ia ona lātou ta' ita'i le tagata ia te ia, he let the man be brought to him.

To send for, summon: ami.

A few additional peculiarities with regard to the verb might be mentioned here:

Fai se tusi ma . . . , somebody to make a thing; valaau ona fesili, loudly demand. Ex.: 'ua tutū i lātou i le faitotoa 'o valaau ona fesili, they stood at the door and loudly demanded . . .

Liu has the meaning of become, grow, turn (into), etc. Ex.: 'ua lui ma'a 'o ia, he was turned into stone.

Elē aogā ona, it is of no use, it is not necessary.

Verbs that indicate the "making" of a thing (in the event of the object being mentioned) are placed next to the object, and, instead of the article, the suitable possessive pronoun to indicate the subject is used. Ex.: 'ua faia lona fale, he built himself a house.
The object stands in a dependent case to the predicate, and, for the genitive, dative, and accusative, reference should be made to the declension of the noun. In Samoan the accusative case is in very frequent use, and often does service where it would be utterly unsuitable in English. The preposition i in reality has a variety of meanings, viz., to, towards, on, up, etc., and its use arises out of the question where?, where to? Ex.: 'ua fai atu 'o ia i tufuga, he said to the labourers; or, 'ua o ifo 'o tofuga i galuega, the labourers came down to work. A further example of the frequent use of the accusative in the written language is: 'o le tala i le tupuga o Samoa, the history of the origin of Samoa; or, 'o le tala i ali'i ma i o latou nu'u.

With relation to the question, where, where to, by which, through what, with what, when, and such like, the accusative is also used.

If the predicate have a double object, both accusative and dative, should the dative be a pronoun it takes its place before the accusative; if not, it comes after. Ex.: 'ua 'ou aumai ia te 'oe lo'u atalii, I have brought my son to you. But: ina aumai ia 'o ia i le fale, brings him into the house. This rule, however, is not always strictly followed.

THE ADJECTIVE

If there be a suitable noun in Samoan which may be used as a substitute for an adjective, this is often done, and that mostly when the adjective concerned is in the superlative. Ex.: the man was very just, can be rendered, 'o le tagata na sili amiotonu; or by, na sili le amiotonu a le tagata, which is, great was the justice of the man. 'Ua
sili le lalelei ma le matagofie a Sina, the beauty and splendour of Sina was great; i.e., Sina was very beautiful and splendid. But the beginner would not be likely to use such a phrase as this, as it is more appropriate to literature than colloquial speech.

The formation of the adjective was discussed on page 6.

Adjectives can be formed by affixing gofie and gata to a word (generally a verb), by which an action that is easy or difficult to accomplish is indicated. Ex.: faigata, difficult to do; faigofie, easy to do; 'o la'au e manuagofie ai le afa 'o le fuafua ma le fau, the trees, out of those is easy to get fire, the “fuafua”-tree and the “fau.” E faigaile 'o tufuga, the boatmen are difficult to handle (manage).

For the use of the Pronouns, see page 11.

The application of the numerals is simple, and has already been considered under The Numerals. It would be as well to remark, with regard to the “Multiplication Numerals,” that those embodying fa’a generally have the meaning of “times.” Ex.: fa’atolu, three times; fa’aono, six times. Those with atu, on the other hand, signify “the —th time.” Ex.: 'o le atu fitu, the seventh time. These distinctions between fa’a and atu are not always strictly adhered to, though.

More than, is rendered by ona tupu. Ex.: to’afagagulu ma ona tupu, more than forty.

The Samoan determination of time is somewhat different to that customary in Europe. Ex.: 'o le tautosaga, the year. But for the four seasons into which it is divided the Samoan has no fixed designations. Vaitoelau, summer; vaipalolo, winter (the “palolo-worm” time). Spring and autumn he has no knowledge of, most likely for the reason that in the equable climate of Samoa the change from one
season to another is not so apparent as in extreme northern and southern latitudes.

Māsina, month. The names for each month of the year are English, or rather, as near to the correct pronunciation of the words as the native tongue is capable of. They are: Januali, Fepuali, Mati, Apelila, Me, Juni, Julai, Aokuso, Setema, Oketopa, Novema, Tesema.

Aso, day—as distinguished from night—ao. The individual days of the week, beginning with Sunday, are: asosā, asogafua, asolua, asolulu, asotofi, asofalaile, asoto’onai. The last word has the meaning of "a day on which food is prepared beforehand," and originated on account of the introduction of this custom among the natives by the Wesleyan missionaries, who compelled the Samoans, in the early days, to cook all food for consumption on Sunday, on the previous day.

Apia, 'o le aso sefulu ma le fā o Novema, i le tausaga e tasi le afe ivagalau ma le lua, Apia, the 14th of November, 1902. Or, in abbreviated form: Apia, le aso 14 Novema 1902.

Itulā or itu aso, hour. These are only used in referring to the hours of the day: itupō, hour of the night. Native opinion varies somewhat as to the exact hours that comprise the day and night to which these words individually apply, but it may generally be taken that the day commences at six o’clock in the morning, and night at seven in the evening. Ex.: itulā e tasi, one o’clock midday; itulā e ono, six p.m.; itupō e fitu, seven p.m., etc. ʻO le itulā 'ua tau gagaifo le lā, between three and four p.m.—literally, when the sun stands low. ʻO le va o le lima ma le ono, between five and six p.m.; ʻo leā au sau va o le i le valu ma le iva. I le ituaso (itulā) e sefulu, or, i le itupō e sefulu, at ten o’clock.
What time is it? can be rendered in several ways: *viz., pe efi le itulā? or, pe efi le vaiaso?, or, po 'ua tā le fia? The first example is the one most generally in use. *Evalu, it is eight o'clock.

_Uati_ (the native notion of the pronunciation of the English word), a watch. 'O le taeao, the morning; _i le taeao_, in the morning; 'o le aoauli, midday, noon; _i le aoauli_, at noon; 'o le afiasi, the evening; _i le afiasi_, in the evening; 'o le tubia o le ao ma le pō, midnight; _nanei pō_, this evening; _asonei_, to-day: _ananafi_, yesterday; _vaveao_, early morning; _anapō_, last night; _anapo fa_, four days ago; _e lūā_, the day after to-morrow: _'ua māvae nisi aso ona . . . ,_ after some time.

Throughout the night would be translated in the following way: _'ua lagā i lātou 'ua aoina le pō_, they waked the whole night through—literally, "it has been the night-day."

The answer to the interrogation _when?_ is in the accusative case. _Ex._: _i le fitu o lausaga o le nofoaiga o Malietoa_, in the seventh year of Malietoa's reign. Now and then, however, if a longer duration of time be referred to, the genitive is employed.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

Only direct ones are to be found in Samoan, and the position of the words does not vary from that of the principal sentence. Often the particle _pe_ (which before _o_ becomes _po_) is introduced into a sentence in which a question occurs, and the particle _ea_, possibly, is never omitted. _Ex._: _'o ai ea 'oe?_, where art thou? Otherwise no further remarks under this head are needed.
These are the principal rules applied to Syntax which are of any consequence to the student of Samoan, but a good deal can be learned by going carefully through the Selections for Reading, together with the explanatory notes at the foot of each which follow, and will serve to facilitate the study of the language.
SELECTIONS FOR READING

I

'Ua lātou fa'amatalaina atu mea 'uma na faia e le tamāloa.—'ua lātou nonofo ai i po e te le i Mulinu'u.—'ua ō ifo tagata e toatele mai le mauga.—'ua fa'apotopoto 'o faipule ma toeaina o le nu'u e filifili ai.—'ua 'uma 'o le upu o le ali'i ona tū mai ai lea le tasi tagata Savaii 'ua fa' apea mai: Sena e! ina fa'alogo ia ia te 'au.—'ou te le poloai atu ia te 'oe.—'ua iu ane le tupu i 'ai 'uma.—'o a'u te toe fo'i mai ia te 'outou, pe a 'ou te mālōlō.—na fetagisi tele 'o fānau.—'ua fai atu le mānaia i le ali'i: "pe e tusa ona 'ou te fai atu se upu ia te 'oe ?"—"'o lea lava, le ali'i e!"—na le alu atu le ali'i i Apia vagana ona fia fa'atau iai ni mea.

NOTES

In Samoan, punctuation is limited to the comma and full-stop, but in these selections additional stops are introduced with a view to making the text clearer.—'ua, a particle: lātou = 'o i lātou—fa'amatalaina is passive, with an active meaning, from fa'amatala, to explain, enlighten, make known.—atu (see Compound Verbs, Sec. 5 p. 35)—mea 'uma, all things, all.—na, imperfect particle—faia = fai, to make.—e, by, through.—tamāloa, fellow. They told him all that the fellow had done.—nonofo, plural of nofo.—ai, this is a much used euphonic particle, without

II

’O le tagata ’ua ivagafulu ma le iva ona tausaga. — ’ua ō a’e i lāua i le a’ega o le ’ai ’ua lātou fetaiai ma teine, o loo ō i latou e utu vai. — se a lau mea ’ua faia na? — ’ua fa’alogo le tagata ’ua ma’i lona atalii, ona alu atu ai lea ’o ia ia te ia. — ’ua tula’i le tama’ ita’i, ’ua alu i lona fale. — ’ua fia’ai le fānau. — ’ua tautala ’o ia i le tagata, ’ua sau mai lona tinā ma lona uso ia te ia. — ’ua ’outou lagona ea nei mea ’uma ? ioe, le alii e! — ’o mea ’uma ’ua e faimai ia te a’u, ’ou te faia lava. — ’o ai ea ’oe ? ’o a’u ’o le foma’i. — tā e, se a le mea e te tagi ai? — se a le mea e te le ’ai ai?
NOTES

'O le tagata (see remarks on verb "to be" p. 33).—ona, plural of the possessive pronoun.—a'ega, rising ground, hilltop.—fetiaiai ma, to meet with, happen.—lātou appears in the subordinate sentence because more than two persons are included in the action.—utu vai, draw water.—Se a, what kind of a: lau (possessive pronoun, second person).—na (terminal particle in the interrogatory sentence).—the e is omitted before faia, the reason for which is self-evident.—fa'alogo, to hear.—tulai, rise, get up.—tama' ita'i, lady.—'ua tautala . . . 'ua alu . . . , as he spoke . . . then . . . ; the Samoan has no liking for subordinate sentences.—lagona, understand, conceive.—tā e !, child! (vocative).

III

Tālofa le alii e! pe e te mālōlō?—'ou mālōlō lava, fa'-afeta'i lava.—pē e iai ni talo fa'atau?—'o le ā le tau o le ato talo e tasi?—e lua sefulu ma lima talo lua seleni.—e fia le tau o le ili lea?—fa'amolemole, se'i au mai tasi le talā ia te a'ū!—'ua 'ou fai atu i le tāma: le atalii ea 'oe o ai, sē? ona tali ai lea 'o ia: 'o 'au 'o le atalii o X.—'ua e iloa ea i la'ū uso? e leai, sole e!—e le aogā ona mātou tali ia te 'oe i lea mea.—'o le la'au na 'ou vaai, sa tupu tele ma le mālosi, 'o ona lau 'ua matagofie ma ona fua 'ua tele.—'ua fai atu le alii ona lātou ta'ita'i mai ai lea le tagata.—'ua tulai le fāfine i le vaveao, 'ua fa'ataalise atu i le 'auva'a.

NOTES

Tālofa = tu aholo, the usual salutation on meeting.—fa'afeta'i, to thank.—talo, "taro" (an edible tuber).—fa'atau, literally, e fa'atau, to trade, buy, sell.—tau, price.—
ato, basket.—seleni, shilling.—ili, mat.—fa'amolemole, please, if you please.—talā, dollar.—o ai (genitive of 'o ai).—sē, my child!—sole e!; friend!—e le aogā ona, it is not necessary.—la'au, tree.—lau, leaves.—fua, a fruit.—fai atu ona, order a thing to be done.—fa'ataalise, go quickly.—'auva'a, beach.

IV

Lo mātou tamā e! 'o i le lagi; ia pai'ā lou suafa. ia o'o mai lou malō. ia faia lou finagalo i le lalolagi e pei ona faia i le lagi. ia e foai mai ia te i mātou i le asonei a mātou mea e 'ai e tatau ma le aso. ia e fa'amagalo ia te i mātou a mātou agasala, e pei 'o i mātou fo'i ona mātou fa' amagaloina atu i ē 'ua agasala mai ia te i mātou. 'aua fo'i e ta'ita'ina i mātou i le tofotofoga; a ia e laveai ia te i mātou ai le leaga. amene.

NOTES

E tatau ma le aso, necessary for the day, daily.—e pei 'o i mātou foi, is a twofold speech and redundant.—tofotofoga, trial: the meaning here is temptation.—fo'i, but now . . .

V

"O LE FA'ATAOTO O LE SAMARIA."—Luka x. 30.

'O le tasi tagata na alu ifo mai Jerusalemia i Jeriko, 'ua maua 'o ia e tagata fao mea; 'ua lātou to'eseina ona 'ofu ma fasi ia te ia, 'ua lātou ō, 'ua tu'ua ia, 'ua tāli oti. 'ua soona alu ifo le tasi faitaulaga i le ala; 'ua iloa atu ia te ia, ona ui ane ai lea i le tasi itu ala; 'ua fa'apea fo'i le sā Levi, 'ua o'o i lea mea, 'ua alu ane, ma matamata ai;
ona ui ane fo'i lea 'o ia i le tasi itu ala. a 'o le tasi Samaria 'ua alu lana malaga, 'ua o'o atu i le mea 'o i ai 'o ia, 'ua iloa 'o ia, ona mutimuti vale lea 'o lona alofa; 'ua alu atu ma nonoa i ona manu'a, 'ua liligi fo'i i ai le suā'u ma le uaina; ua fa'ati'eti'e ia te ia i lana lava manu, ma ta'ita'i ia te ia i le faile talimalō ma tausi ia te ia. 'o le taeao 'o lea alu ia, ona to ai lea 'o tenari e lua ma avatu i le matai i le faile, 'ua fai atu ia te ia: "ai se mea e te toe fa'atau ai, 'ou te taui atu ia te 'oe, pea 'ou te toe sau."

NOTES

Fa'ataoto, example, parable.—mau, find, meet with.—tagata fao mea, robber.—to 'ese, draw, pull out.—tāli, to be near by: literally, nurse: "he nursed the dying; he was near by the dying."—soona, casual, accidental.—ui ane, pass by.—itu, side.—'o le sā, member of a family.—'o le sā Levi, one of the family of Levi.—mea, place.—iloa, see.—mutimuti vale, to be angry, grieved: then his pity was aroused.—alofa, besides "love," also means "pity," "mercy," "to save," "spare."—lana lava, his own.—'o le ā alu ia, he will (wishes to) go.—to, draw, pull.—matai, director, manager.—fale talimalō, guest-house.—toe, the remaining, to a greater distance.—taui atu, compensate, make amends for.—These selections would give the learner more practice with the language if he were to retranslate them.

VI

O le tupuga o le Ele'ele o Samoa ma tagata

O le tane ma le fāfine; 'o le igoa o le tane, 'o Afimaisa 'esa'e; 'o le igoa o le fāfine 'o Mutalali; 'ua fānau la lā tama 'o Papa'ele. 'o Papa'ele, na ia usu ia ia Papasosolo;
fānau le tama ’o Papanofo ; usu Papanofo ia Papatū ; fānau le tama ’o Fatutū. Fatutū, na ia usu ia Ma’atūanoa, fānau le tama ’o Tupufiti ; Tupufiti na ia usu ia Mutia, fānau le tama Mauutoga ; Mauutoga, na usu ia Sefā ; Sefā na usu ia Vaofali ; Vaofali na usu ia Taāta, fānau le tama ’o Mauotufu ; Mauotufu, na ia usu ia Tavai, fānau ’o Toi ; Toi, na ia usu ia Tuafua, fānau ’o Masame ; Mauutoga, na ia usu ia Mamala, fānau ’o Mamalava ; Mamalava na ia usu ia Malili ; Malili na ia usu ia Tapuna, fānau ’o Vaovaololoa.

Ona silasila ifo ai lea ’o Tagaloa a lagi, ’o leā uumi lava la’ au, ona auina ifo ai lea ’o lana ’au ’auna, e igoa ’o Fue ; ona sosolo ai lea ’o le Fue i luga o le la’au, ona toe malou ifo ai lea ’o tumutumu o la’au. ona toe auina ifo ai lea ’o le tasi ’au ’auna a Tagaloa a lagi, e igoa ’o le Tuli, e asiasi ifo. ona alu ai lea ’o le Tuli ia Tagaloaalagi, fai i ai: “’ua lele i le nu’u, a e tasi le ponā, a nei e leai ni la’au e ’aina e tutupu, ’ua malō le Fue i lalo.” ona fai mai ai lea ’o Tagaloa a lagi; “sau, ina alu ma le la’au lea e sasa’a ai.” ’ua alu ifo le Tuli ma le la’au ’ua sasa le Fue ; ona pa’ū ai lea i le Ele‘ele ’ua faupu’e ai. ona alu lea le Tuli ia Tagaloa ; ’ua fai atu: “’ua ’uma ona sasa.” ona fai atu lea ’o Tagaloa a lagi i le Tuli: “’ua lelei, a e alu ia i lalo ina toe asiasi.” ona alu ifo lea ’o le Tuli ’ua vaavaai ’ua pala le Fue ; ’ua tutupu ai Ilo tetele lava ; ’ua alu a’e le Tuli ia Tagaloa ’ua fai atu: “Alii e! ’ua pala le Fue, ’ua tutupu ai mea tetele e gaoioi,” ona fai atu lea ’o Tagaloa i le Tuli: “ia lā o ifo ma le Tiapolo, e igoa ’o Gaiō.” ona fai ai lea e le Tiapolo ’o le Tagata i le Ilo ; ’ua muamua le Ulu ; ’ua fai atu le Tiapolo: “’o le Ulu lenei”; ’ua fai mai le Tuli: “ia ta’u ai lo’u igoa.” ’o le mea lea ’ua ta’ua ai: ’o le tuli Ulu, le isi fāsi Ulu. ’ua fai atu le Tiapolo: “’o le mānava lenei”; ’ua fai atu le Tuli: “ia ta’u ai
lo'u igoa." 'o lea 'ua ta'u ai itū mānava: 'o tuli mānava. 'ua fai lima; 'ua fai atu le Tulī: "ia ta'u lo'u igoa." 'o le ā na igoa ai gauga lima: 'o tulilima. 'ua fai vae; 'ua fai atu le Tulī: "ia ta'u lo'u igoa." 'o lea 'ua ta'u ai ai gauga vae: 'o tulivae.

NOTES

tupuga, origin, rise.—fānau, to be born.—la lā = la lāua.—ia = 'o ia.—usa, join, unite oneself with.—Tagaloaalagi, creator, author.—umi, be long.—fue, a creeper.—sosolo, climb, creep.—malou, bow down, bend down.—fai, say.—ponā, mistake, fault.—malō, rule, govern.—la'au, (here) log, trunk.—sasa'a, strike.—faupu'e, make a heap, pile.—tetele (see The Adjective).—gaoioi, (here) move to and fro.—Tiapolopo, devil.—i le Ilo, from the Ilo.—'o le mea . . . therefore . . . —le isi fāsi, a piece.—itu, side.—gauga, joint.—tulilima, elbow.

VII

The Fire-rubbing

O le māsani o Samoa mai le vavau e leai ni a lātou afitusi po'o ni afi tā e tusa ma afi 'ua māsani ai aili papalagi. a 'o afi e māsani Samoa e si'a'ina i 'o lātou lima; 'o le tasi la'au e pito i lalo i le 'ele 'ele e ta'ua ia: 'o le si'aga, a 'o le la'au pu'upu'u e u'u i lima e lua o le tagata e ta'ua 'o le gatu. 'a si'a'ina le si'aga i le gatu, ona ola mai ai lea 'o le afi i le penu o le la'au, aua e malulū le penu. 'o le la'au, pe a si'a'ina i le gatu, e tusa i le mālū o le falaoa; 'o le mea lea 'ua olagofiē ai le afi. 'afai 'ua vaai ifo le tagata 'ua te si'a'ina le afi, 'ua uliuli le si'aga ma 'ua pusa
tele mai, 'ua mu le penu o le afi, ona fai atu ai lea 'o le tasi: "sōia, 'ua tū le afi." e faia lava 'o le si'aga ma le gatu i le la'au lava e tasi. 'a e le avanea se gatu o se isi la'au e si'a ai le si'aga o le isi la'au, e le maua ai se afi. 'ua iai ni isi la'au seiloga e mago i le lā. ona fa'atooa maua ai lea 'o le afi, pea si'a. 'a 'ua i ai ni isi la'au i le maua e māfai lava ona maua ai 'o le afi, 'a 'o mata e le fa'alāina; 'ua iai ni isi la'au e le aogā e le maua ai se afi. 'o la'au e mauagoifē ai le afi 'o le fuafua ma le fau. 'o la'au ia e malū o laua aano e māfai lava e teine ma fāfine ona si'a ai 'o a lātou afi. 'a 'ua i ai fo'ī ni isi la'au e si'agatā seiloga 'o ni tane ona maua lea 'o le afi pea si'a; e ma'a'a 'o lātou aano.

NOTES

Mai le vavau, from the remotest times.—afitā, stone-fire appliance.—si'a, to rub.—pito, put, lie.—penu, dry wood-dust.—malū, loose, spongy.—malū, loose, spongy.—tū means here, burn (it is there!).—lava e tasi, a single.—avane, take.—seiloga, so much as only.—mago, dry.—fa'ato'a, first.—'o mata e le, it need not, it does not.—fa' alāina, shone upon by the sun.—aogā, profit.—fuafua and fau are trees.

VIII

The Aitu (Spirit) Moaula in Matautu sa

O le aitu sa tapua'i i ai Apia ma Matautu. 'o lona igoa 'o Moaula; 'o le mea sa tū ai le la'au 'o le pu'a na i ai nei le fale o le fa' amasino peletania. 'o le mea 'ua ala ai 'o le fa'ai'goaina 'o Matautu sā: 'afai e alu atu se tagata Apia e alu i Lelepa ona togi atu lea 'o se niu po 'o se isi mea i gauta i lalo o le pu'a ma fai atu lana upu e fa'apea: "se'i
muamua atu le mea lea i Matautu sā.” 'a fa’apea e alu atu se malaga e sopoia atu Matautu ona muamua lea ona momoli a’e 'o le oso ia Moaula. ona ava’e lea i le aitu, e ta’ua lea ato 'o le oso sā. 'a e ’afai e le ai se oso e muamua a’e ia Moaula, e fasia lea tagata ia oti e le Sualii,'a le 'o lea, e mulimuli pea 'o le Sualii i ia lātou malaga ma fetogi ia te i lātou i ma’a, se’ia tu’uina mai lava e i lātou 'o se mea. ona fa’ato’a te’a lea ma i lātou 'o le Sualii’i. Sa tū le la’a médecine o le fale o le isi tulafale Matautu e igoa 'o Feagaimaali. 'a 'ua le maua i ona po nei se tala, pe sa 'ai e Feagaimaali ni mea o taulaga, sa ave ia Moaula. sa ta’ua lava Matautu sā ’o le māolumālu o Moaula.

NOTES

'O le mea 'ua ala here means: what grounds, etc., for what cause?—ala, originate, result.—pu’a, a tree.—nei, now.—i gauta = i uta, inland.—se’i (optative).—moli, here: render, offer up.—Sualii, God: respectful expression used to the “Aitu.”—te’a ma, leave, abandon.—i lumafale, before, in front of.—'o le isī, a certain.

IX

Tabu

O le tala i tapui. sa māsani Samoa i le faasāina 'o mea e loto i ai tagata i tapui. e fai lava le tapui a le āiga i lo lātou lava aitu. e fai foi le tapui a le taulasea i ana lava vai e uiga i ma’i e māfai e ia ona fōfo. e māsani le nu’u 'o Aana i le tapui faititili, auā sa tapua’i i latou i le faititili. 'afai 'o se tagata 'ua ia ave se mea i le fanua 'ua
'uma ona tapuia i le tapui faititili, 'o le ā malaia lava 'o ia pe toia i se faititili pe toia 'o lātou fanua po 'o lātou fale i se faititili. 'afai e toia se tagata i se faititili po 'o so lātou fanua, ona iloa ai lea 'o le tagata lava lea, 'ua ana 'ai le tapui pe ave se mea i le fanua 'ua tapui i le tapui faititili. 'o le tasi tapui e ta'ua ia 'o le tapui a'u, 'ua fili le launiu ma 'ua fa'aumiumi le isi pito e tusa ma le gutu o le a'u. 'afai e ave 'o se tasi se mea i lenā fanua pe na te 'ai se niu, ona alu ai lea 'o ia e fagota, ona oso mai lea 'o le a'u ma tu'i ia te ia. 'a le 'o lea, 'afai fai galuega 'o ia i le vao pe tā la'au po 'o isi lava mea e māfai lava, ona fiti mai 'o se fāsi la'au i lona mata. ona iloa ai lea 'o le tagata lea 'ua ana ave ni mea mai le fanua, 'ua i ai le tapui a'u. 'ua māsani foi 'o tagata taulasea e māsani i lātou ma ma'i 'ese'ese e aogā ia lātou vai, ona lātou vai ai lea 'o se tasi afifi laitiiti i se fāsi siapo. ona fa'atautauina lea ona afifi i le fanua 'o le ā fa'asāina. ma 'ua ta'u atu fo'i i le tapui le igoa o le mai po o le puga (tute) po o le lasomimi po o se isi lava ma'i. 'a e 'afai e alu ane se tagata ma ia ave se mea o lenā fanua 'ua fa'asāina, e tupu lava ia te ia le ma'i e tusa ma le upu 'ua ta'uina e le taulasea i le tapui.

NOTES

Fa'asā, sanctify, hallow.—f. i. tapui, the tabu covered with hangings.—loto, wish, desire.—taulasea, medicine-man.—e uīga, with respect to.—toia, met with.—'ua ana 'ai . . . , that his food . . . : that he has eaten.—Tapui a'u, the a'utabu: a'u is a fish.—fili, twist, plait.—launiu, cocoanut leaf.—e māfai lava, it is possible.—fīti, to spring.—afifi, bundle, package.—pupa, tute, lasomimi are diseases.
HOW TRUTH WILL OUT

O le tasi tū sa māsani ai Samoa i aso o le vavau 'Afaia o se mea 'ua saili, 'a 'ua tupu ai se fefinauaiga a se toalua, ona au mai ai lea 'o le popo 'ua fa'atū i luga o le fala e u i lalo le muli, 'a e u i luga le mata. ona fa'apea lea 'o le upu. 'o le ā vili nei le popo; 'afai e u atu ia te oe le mata ia, e te fa'afiti fua,' a e te pepelo 'o 'oe lava. 'afai fo'i e u mai ia te 'au le mata, 'ou te fa'afiti fua fo'i au, 'a e 'ou te pepelo. o le tasi fo'i lea mea sa fa'aiu ai finauga a Samoa.

O le tasi fo'i mea e fa'aiu ai finauga mafa'amaoni ai tala, e māsani ai fo'i Samoa, 'afai e finau, pea 'ua le iloa se fa'amaoni, ona fesili atu lea 'o le tasi i le tasi: "pe 'aina 'oe e ai e te fa'amaoni i fea ?" ona ta'u atu lava lea e ia 'o le aitu sili lona mana na te 'aina ma ta'u atu fo'i le aitu o lo lātou āiga e fa'amaoni i ai. Ona iu ai lea 'o lea finauga. 'A 'o ona po nei 'afai e fai atu se tasi: "e 'aina 'oe e ai ?"—"e 'aina 'au e Siova."—"e te fa'amaoni i fea ?"—"'ou te fa'amaoni ia Jesu."

NOTES

_Fefinauaiga_, fight, contest.—_fa'atū_, put down, put straight.—_fala_, mat.—_u_, point out, indicate.—_muli_, end.—_mata_, eyes of the cocoanut.—_vili_, bore, drill.—_fa'afiti_, deny, disown.—_fa'amaoni_, prove, verify.—_e ai_, by whom.—_mana_, strength, might.—_Siova_ = Jehova.

XI

O LE TAUTO FA'ASAMOA

Ua māsani Samoa i po o le vavau i le tauto. 'afai 'o se mea 'ua gaōiia, ona fa' apotopoto lea 'o alii ma faipule o lea nu'u e fai la lātou fono tauto, 'o po o le vavau e tofu
lava le aiga ma lo lātou aitu e atua i ai. 'o isi 'ua fai mo lātou atua 'o i'a i le sami, 'o isi āiga e fai mo lātou atua 'o manu felele. 'ua potopoto alii ma tulafale, ona au mai ai lea 'o le ātanoa e fai ai 'ava. 'ua tu'u i luma o le fono, ona tofu ai lea 'o le tagata ma lana fa'apona e ave atu i le ātanoa. ona māmā ai lea 'o le 'ava 'ua palu fa'atasi fo'i le 'ava ma le fa'apona. ona tufa ai lea 'o le 'ava 'a au mai le 'ava a le tagata; ona 'uma lea 'o lana tapuaiga e fa'apea lana upu: "'o le ava taumafa lea ia e mana fa'aali lē 'ua ga'oi le mea."

Ona tu'u'ai lea 'o le aai i o lātou āiga ma 'ua fa'alagologo i lo lātou nu'u, po 'o ai e oti. 'afai 'o se tasi o lo lātou nu'u 'ua 'ai e se i'a o le sami pe oti i le sami, ona iloa lea 'ua mana le atua o lea āiga. 'afai 'o se tasi e utia i se manu i le vao pe pa'ū pe manu'a pe oti pe toia i se la'au, ona iloa lea 'ua mana le atua o ia aiga.

NOTES

Fa'asamoa, Samoan: all proper names of countries and peoples use fa'a in their adjectival form.—afai 'o se mea 'ua ga'oiia; this is wrongly constructed, and should be afai 'ua ga'iiia se mea. —'o le tagata here means each, every —fa'apona is a piece of string, or thin cord, in which a knot is made.—mua, previously.—tapaiga, prayer, oath.—'ava taumafa, ceremonial kava-drinking.—mana, strength, to have strength.—utia (see Passive Verbs), u, to bite, sting.—pe, or.—to, slay.

XII

SOME CRIMES AND THEIR PUNISHMENTS

O LE GAOI

Sa lē māsani tele Samoa i po o le vavau i le ga'oi, anā 'o se upu e māsiasi ai e fai fo'i mo ona luma e o'o fo'i lea luma
i lana fānau. sa lē māsani Samoa i le gaōi o mea i totonu o fale; a 'o mea e tau gaōia ai tagata: 'o 'ulu ma fa'i ma
talo ma pua'a. sa fa'asalaina lava tagata gaōi i sala e
māsani ai Samoa: 'o talo ma afo; 'o isi sala e selau afo ma
talo e lua selau; 'o isi sala e selau talo ma se pua'a; 'o
isi sala e noanoa vae ma lima (o le tagata gaōi) pei 'o le
pua'a ma fa'ataatia i le lā i lumafale; 'o isi sala 'o le vele
ala pe 'eli ala; 'a e matuā fa' alumaina ma le 'inosia le
tagata gaōi.

O LE FASIOTI TAGATA

E tāui le oti i le oti, e le fa'atali sei maua le na ia fasioti
le tagata. 'a e tau lava 'o se vave maua e le āiga e o 'lātou
le tagata ua oti, po 'o le uso po 'o le matai o le āiga po 'o
so ona atalii e sui a'i le 'ua oti. 'a 'ua i ai se tagasiti e
māfai ai ona ola 'o le sala: 'o le ifoga e alu i le āiga po 'o
le itū malō e o lātou le tagata 'ua oti, e ave le pagota ma
fa'apulou i le 'ie toga; e ta'ua lea ie "'o le 'ie o le malō." e
māfai lava ona ola le pagota e sa'oloto fo'i 'o ia i mea
'uma e fealua'i ai 'o ia.

'Ua i ai ni isi sala e fa'asalaina ai pagota, e ta'ua lea
sala. "'o le sala mamafā 'o le u teve." 'o le teve 'o le
la'au e tupu i le vao e malūlū lona tino e tele lona fe'u 'afai
e u i nifo 'o le tagata e matuā tīgaina tele 'o ia i le māsina
'atoa, auā 'ua fulafula ona tainifo ma le laulaufaiva ma
ona laugutu, e lē māfai ona 'ai 'o ia pe inu i vaiasosā e
tele. 'o isi e ola, 'o isi e tupu ai 'o lātou ma'i ma oti ai, auā 'o le sala lea e mamafā lava.

O FA'ALEMIGAO 'ESE

O le tū ma le māsani i Samoa i po o le vavau 'ua matuā
sā lava 'o le pisā o tagata po 'o le pa'ō o se mea i le afiafi ina
'ua latalata i le faofale 'o tagata e o'o lava i le faia 'o taligasua. 'afai 'o se aiga 'ua 'uma ona faia a lātou taligasua ma 'ua inu a lātou niu ma ta'e a lātou aano, 'a 'o le'i ta'e mai se niu mai i le sua a le alii, e fa'asalaina lava i lātou i le fasia e le aiga o le alii ma veteina fo'i a lātou mea ma fasi foi a lātou pua'a, auā 'o le amio fa'alēmigao 'ua faia e i lātou 'o le fa'a iloga lea o lo lātou fiasili.

Afai fo'i 'o se tagata 'ua alu i le malae ma fa'amalu ni ta'ulu la'au po 'o se láuniu, 'a lē tu'ua i lalo e ta'ita'i, 'o le fa'alēmigao lea e fasia foi 'o ia. Afai fo'i 'o se tagata 'ua alu ma sana avega po 'o se to'i e amo i lona ua i le malae po 'o lumafale o le aai po 'o lumafale o se alii, e fai atu lava 'o le alii o lea nu'u i o lātou taulelela: ia ō atu e fasi ia te ia ia foafoa ma gaugau. Afai 'o se tagata e tautala tū i luma o alii ma tulafale i totonu o se fale, 'o le fa'alēmigao lea, e tosoina 'o ia i lafo e ni taulelela ma fasi ia te ia ma tuli 'ese, 'aua lē toe nofo mai i le mea o potopoto ai le nu'u. Afai fo'i 'o se tagata e inu tū i totonu o se fale, 'o le fa'alēmigao lea e faia lava e pei 'o le upu i luga.

NOTES

Aua o se upu e māsiasi, one would have been ashamed to utter the word.—luma, shame, disgrace.—tau, only.—afi, bunch of dried fish.—fa'ataatia, is spread; here means, put down.—vele ala, clear a path of weeds (considered hard labour).—fa'aluma, to bring disgrace upon: make contemptible.

Le na ia . . . which . . . a e tau lava, but . . . —le āiga e o lātou le tagata 'ua oti . . . , "the family of yours of the dead"; meaning, those to whom the dead belong. —ifoga, intercession.—itumalō, district, region.—pagota,
criminal, guilty one.—fa'apulou, adorn the head.—saoloto, unmolested.—u, to sting.—teve, teve-plant.—'o le u teve, the sting, prick of the teve-root.—malūlū = malū.—tainifo, the gums.—laugutu, the lip.

Fa'alēmigao, disregard, offence, blow to one's self-esteem.—fa'amigao, reverence, veneration.—pisā, to make a noise by shouting, screaming, etc.; pa'o, to make a noise by beating, knocking, etc.—faofale, to call the time when all people shall go to their houses to sleep.—taligasua, evening meal.—ta'e, break open cocoanuts.—aano, meat.—sua, evening meal (Chief-word).—fiasili, pride, haughtiness.

Ta'ulula'au, a hewn-off branch of the bread-fruit tree.—lāuniu, leaf of the cocoa-palm.—tu'u, take down.

Toi, axe.—ua, neck, throat; also the part of the shoulder on which a load rests when carried.—foafoa, beat holes in the head.—gaugau, beat, break to pieces; here means, to cripple by blows.

Tū, to stand; here, standing.—toso, draw out, turn out.

XIII

SINA, THE NAME OF THE MOON

O le tama'ita'i 'o Sina; 'o le tama'ita'i Falealupo; na nofotane ia le Tuiokea; ona maua ai lea 'o le auamanū; 'o le auamanū 'o le igoa o le pa; ona toe fo'i mai lea i Samoa 'o Sina ma ona tuagane e to'atolu 'o Faumea ma La'ulu ma Aaufa'ae'e; 'ua lātou fe'ausi mai. 'ua lātou ō mai, ona oti ai lea 'o Faumea e lata i Uea, "'o le mea lea 'ua igoa ai le aau e lata i Uea," 'o Faumea." 'ua fe'ausi mai pea le malaga ma agi la lātou pese e fa'apea:

Sina e, tagi, 'au'au mai,
'o Puava ia, 'ua tu'u mai
a mea taunuu i ai.
'Ua oti La'ulu; 'o le mea lea 'ua igoa ai le aau e lata mai i Falealupo, "'o La'ulu." 'Ua fe'ausi mai pea le malaga; ona taunuu mai lea 'o Sina; a 'o Aaufa 'ae'e 'ua oti i gatai i le matafaga; 'o le mea lea 'ua igoa ai le aau e lata i le fāfā "'o Aaufa 'ae'e." 'Ua o'o mai Sina i uta; ona fānau ai lea 'o le tama 'o Tautunu. 'Ua faivā Tautunu; ona ō ai lea 'o Sina ma Tautunu i Palauli. 'a 'ua fai atu Sina i atu e sola ia i tai; ona maliu ai lea 'o Sina i Palauli, 'ua alu i le masina. 'a 'o le tufaaga o lana tama 'o le potopoto atu, 'ua momoli a'e lava i le tu'u i luga o le ma'a o le vai i Vailoa; 'a e alu le atu ia; 'ua alu Sina i le masina, 'ua nofo ai ma Faga ma Leu; 'o le mea lea 'ua ta'ua ai le masina, pea 'atoa, "'o le punifaga." 'Ua sau Leu, sa tafao. ('ua ta'ua le masina o le punifaga) ona fai atu lea 'o Leu ia Sina, se'i ta'u lona igoa. Ona fa'aigoa ai lea 'o le masina, pea vaea se itu laitiiti. "'Ua tafa'aleu le masina." 'Ua iu le tala.

NOTES

Nofotane, marry (of a woman); faivā, marry (of a man).—Tuioueva, king of Ueva.—auamanū, lucky fish-hook, mascot.—pa fish-hook.—fe'ausi (plural of 'au), swim.—aau, reef, cliff.—lagi = pese.—'au 'au = 'au.—taunuu, fill, attain.—The verse, literally translated, reads: "Sina, weep, swim, there is Puava (a point of land near Falealugo), which (before us) lies, the place to come to."—i gatai, seawards, out to sea.—atu, bonito (fish).—tufaaga, share, portion.—'o le potopoto atu, a piece of bonito.—i le, and then.

XIV

VAVE, THE WAR-SPirit

O le tasi aitu, sa taoi Matautu, 'ia na te iloa lelei mea 'uma e aogā e manuia ai ma malōlosi ai i tāua. E ta'ua
ia 'o le aitu tāu; 'o Vave 'o le igoa lea o le aitu. 'a 'o lona tino mai 'o le manuali'i, e pei 'o le leo fo'i o le manuali pea tagi mai 'o ia.

E fa'apea: 'afai 'ua alu Matauto i le tāua, 'afai e lele atu le manuali i luma o 'au ma tagi ma toe fo'i mai ma toe fo'i atu, ona fiafia ai lea 'o 'au a le Mataatu, auā 'o le ā manumalō; 'a e 'afai e lele atu le manu i tua 'o 'au ma 'ua le toe fo'i mai, ona tupu ai lea 'o le fese o'au ma leatuatuvale e vaivai fo'i i lātou, auā e iloa 'uma e tagata lona tino ma lona tagi mai.

NOTES

Iloa lelei = matuā iloa.—manuali'i is the name of the Aitu who takes the form of a bird.

It is advised that the words appearing in these notes should be learned by heart, after which it would be good practice for the student to translate back again into Samoan the pieces he has already put into English.

These selections from No. VI. onwards are taken from "A Collection of Samoan Texts," which was translated into German, with native Samoan assistance, and published in Berlin.

XV

'O le gagana Siamani

O le tasi aso 'ua afio atu se tupu ma lona alo i le tuligāmanu. 'Ua tele le vevela, 'o le mea lea sa tu'u ai e i laua 'o laua 'ofu i luga o le tua o le tagata fa'aaluma. "'ua fetalai atu le tupu ia te ia: 'ua ia te 'oe le avega e tatau mo le asini i ou luga." Ona tali ai lea le tagata fa'aaluma: "La'u afioga e! e leai, 'a 'ua ia te a'u le avega o asini e lua!"
NOTES

Vevela, heat.—tu'u, lay, put.—tua, back.—tagata, fa‘aaluma, fool, buffoon.—avega e tatau, load, burden for . . .—afioga, grandeur.

XVI

VALESCA

'O le tasi aso 'ua fetaia‘i a’oa’ o e toatolu ma se tagata Jutaia e fia ula i ai. 'Ua alu ane le tasi i ona luma ma fai atu ia te ia: "Tālofa, lo‘u tamā Aperaamo!" Ona alu ai lea 'o ia. Ona alu ai lea le isi i ona luma ma 'ua fa‘apea: "Tālofa, lo‘u tamā Isaako!" Mulimuli ane 'ua alu ane i ona luma 'o lona to 'atolu ma ia upu: "Tālofa, lo‘u tamā Jakopo!" 'Ua 'uma ona ō ane 'o i lātou 'uma le to‘atolu, ona liliu lea le tagata Jutaia ma fai atu ia te i lātou: "'O a‘u e le 'o Aperamo po 'o Isaako po 'o Jakopo, 'a 'o a‘u o Saulo le atalii o Kiso sa alu e saili ai asini a lona tamā; fa‘auta 'ua 'ou maua i lātou."

NOTES

A’oa’o here means student.—ula, make a joke.—i ai, with him.—i ona luma (see PREPOSITIONS).—'o lona to 'atolu, the third from him.—ma ia upu, with these words.—Kiso, Kish (Biblical name): Saul’s father.—asini, ass.

XVII

SAMOA

'O LE LUKO MA LE TAMAI MAMOE

Na fepauti fa‘atasi le luko ma le tama‘i māmo‘e i le vaitafe lā te fia inu. E i gauta le luko, e i gatai le tama‘i
māmo'e. 'Ua fai atu le luko i le tama'i māmo'e: "'Ua e fa'agaepu ea le vai 'ou te le mafai ona inu ai?" 'Ua tali atu le tama'i māmo'e ma le fefe ma le tetemu: "Le alii e, e leai lava; silasila ia 'ua sau le tafe mai ia te 'oe; pe alu atu fa'apefea le palapala mai lenei mea auā e tafea i tai?" 'Ua tali mai le luko: "e ui ina mea e leaga 'oe, 'ua e tuaupua a'u i lelā tausaga." Ona tali atu lea le tama'i māmo'e: "le alii e, 'ua fa'ataoa fanaua a'u i le tausaga nei." Ona ita ai lea 'o le luko 'ua lilivau ona nifo 'ua fai mai: "a le 'o 'oe. 'A'o lou tamā!" Ona oso lea 'o ia i le tama'i mamo'e 'ua na saeia.

NOTES

Luko, wolf.—tama'i māmo'e, lamb.—fepauti fa'atasi, to meet with someone.—i gauta, inland.—i gatai, down-stream.—fa'agaepu, to make muddy, thick.—ea (see last paragraph but one in Syntax).—tetemu, tremble, shiver.—e leai lava, by no means.—palapala, mud.—e ui ina . . . , for all that . . . —tuaupu, to slander.—fa'ataoa, first.—oso, attack.—saeia, to tear.

XVIII

O LE MATAGI MA LE LA

Sa fai le finauga a le lā ma le matagi po 'o ai so lāua e sili ona mālosi. 'Ua alu ane le tasi tamāloa 'ua pulupulu 'o ia i le 'ofu fa'aua. Ona fa'apea ai lea i lāua: "'o le tamāloa lenā e iloa ai so lāua e sili; ai mafai ona ia to 'ese lona ofu fa'aua e so lāua, 'ua malō ia." Ona agi lea le matagi tetele, 'ua to mai fo'i timuga, 'ua atili ai ona fa'-amau lona 'ofu. 'Ua tu'u faiaina le matagi. Ona matafi ai lea 'o le ao uliuli 'ua mugālā. 'Ua fa'alogo le tamāloa 'ua vevela ona to lea e ia lona ofu fa'aua. 'Ua malo le lā.
SELECTIONS FOR READING

NOTES

Finauga, fight, contest.—pulupulu, wrap up.—'ofu fa'aua, waterproof coat.—to 'ese, to draw, pull out.—malō, to remain victor.—tetele implies here, tele lava: this form of wording often occurs.—to mai, fall down.—timuga, shower of rain.—fa'amau, hold on.—faiaina, conquered.—matafi, seek diversion, go separately.—mugālā, sunshine (translated freely, "burn of the sun").—fa'alogo, perceive, note.

XIX

'O LE LEOLEO MAMO'E MA LE LUKO

'O le tama sa leoleo māmo'e, 'ua alaga 'o ia: "'Ua sau le luko!" Ona taufetuli atu lea 'o tagata e fāsi le manu fe'ai. 'Ua o'o i ai ona 'ata'ata ai lea 'o le tama 'ua fai mai: "'Ua leai se luko, 'o la'u mea ula." 'Ua fa'apea so'o 'o ia; ona iu lea ina lātou le toe usiusita'i i lona valaau ia i lātou. 'Ua o'o i le tasi aso ona sau moni lea le luko. 'Ua uiō le tama 'a e leai se tasi na alu i ai, auā 'ua fa'apea 'o tagata: "'o lana mea ula, 'a e leai se luko. Ona 'aiina lea 'o mamoe e le luko."

NOTES

Leoleo, guard, watch over.—taufetuli (see IRREGULAR VERBS).—'ata'ata, laugh at.—mea ula, joke.—so'o, often.—ona iu lea ina, so it came about that . . . , at last . . . —ia i lātou=ia te i lātou.—uiō, cry, call out.—'ai, devour.
'O le aeto ma le gata

'O le aeto 'o se manu poto lea. 'O lona poto 'ua ia lele ai i mea manaluluga e i ai papa ma mauga ma mea e lata i le tofē e fai ai lona ofaga e tu'u ai ona fua ma tausi ai lana toloai ina ia sa'o. A e ui ina poto le aeto i le tausiga o ana tama, 'ua poto foi le gata 'ua ia saili lava seia maua le mea e moe ai le aeto ma lana toloai. I le 'ua maua i le gata le ofaga o le aeto 'ua ia taumafai ina ia maua 'o tama'i manu, 'a e le mafai ona totolo i le papa e tu sa'o. 'O lea 'ua fai ai e le gata se isi o ana togafiti. 'Ua saili i le mea e agi mai le matagi ona alu lea i ai ma nofo ai, 'ua ia mā nava atu ai le savili leaga e o'o ai i le ofaga 'o i i tama'i manu, ona mamate ai lea. 'O le tū o le aeto, a mate se tama'i manu, ona tu'u 'ese lea i tua e pa'ū ai i le tofē. 'O le gata 'o le a 'aina lea tama'i manu 'ua mate. Mulimuli ane 'ua iloa e le aeto 'ua leaga le ofaga ona 'o le savili leaga na mānava mai e le gata, e mata 'o le a mamate ai lana toloai. Ona ia alu lea ma aumaia le tasi ma'a vaivai, 'ua ta'ua 'o se ma'a vaila 'au, 'ua tu'u i le ofaga, ina ia mānava ai ia tama'i manu. 'Ua aoga lea ma'a vaila 'au 'ua malōlosi ai pea ia tama'i manu, e le afaina ai i togafiti a le gata.

NOTES

Aeto, eagle.—'o lona poto, on account of his prudence; similar to 'o le mea, because of these things, therefore 'o lona ma'i, because of his sickness, etc. These turns of speech should be noted.—papa, rock, crag.—tofē, precipice.—ofaga, nest.—fua, egg.—toloi, brood, batch.—sa'o, healthy, sound.—tausiga, care, fostering.—seia, until, to.—totolo, creep, crawl.—savili, breeze, air.—mate, to die
(in referring to animals).—tu, custom, habit.—ma'a, stone.—ma'a vaila'au, medicine-stone.

XXI

'O LE TAULAGA E FIAFIA AI LE ATUA

Sai ai i le tasi fāfine Initia ni ana tama to 'alua, sa tauaso le to 'atasi. 'O le fāfine fa'apaupau lava 'o ia, 'ua na le iloa le tala i le alofa o le Atua. 'Ua tupu le puapuaga i lona aiga, ona fa'apea lea 'o ia: e lelei ina fa'alauklelelei le finagalo o lona atua i se taulaga e avatu ia te ia. I le 'ua ō le fāfine ma ana tama i le vaitafe 'ua fa'apaia'aina mo atua, 'ua ia tago i lana tama 'ua lē ponā ma ua lafo ia te ia i le vai, 'ua 'aina le tama e Korokotaila sa i ai. Ona manatu ifo lea 'o le fāfine 'ua talia e lona atua lana taulaga. 'Ua fesili atu le tasi ia te ia: po 'o lea le mea 'ua ala ai ina avatua lana tama 'ua lē ponā? Ana fia fai taulaga i lona atua, po'ua lelei ina tu'u atu pea le tama tauaso, auā e fa'alēaogā lea tama, 'a e fa'asa'o pea le isi tama. Ona tali mai lea le fāfine 'ua fa'apea: “e leai, a 'ou fai taulaga i l'ou atua, 'ou te avatu pea ia te ia le mea 'ua sili ona lelei ia te a'u, e le aogā ona ave se mea 'ua ponā.

NOTES

Fiafia, rejoice, cheer.—Initia, Indian.—fa'apaupau, heathen.—fa'alauklelelei, soothe (with kind words), get on well together, reconcile.—fa'apaia'aina, consecrate.—mo atua (dative; which is seldom used in Samoan, most verbs governing the accusative case).—'ua lē ponā, without fault.—korokotaila, crocodile.—manatu ifo, think about oneself.—po'o... ala ai ina... , how is it that?... —ana... (see OPTATIVE).—fa'alēaogā, bring no profit, benefit.
O le tala i le a'ega o se mauga maualuga ia Niu Kini

O sina tala i lā mātou malaga ma lo'u matai 'o Misi Seneka. 'O le malaga e alu i le tuasivi o lenei atu mauga, ma le fia iloa 'o nu'u i ai i lenei atu mauga ma le uiga o tagata; 'o le aso 3 Julai na amata ai le malaga, 'ua amata le malaga i le mea e igoa ia Kalaikoro i luga o le mauga i gauta o Kapakapa. E tusa ma maila e 26 le va ma le sami. 'Ua amata ona savali la matou malaga i le itula e 6 i le taea, 'ua mātou sopoia le atu mauga; 'ua o'o i le aafia, 'ua lata ona goto le lā, 'ua mātou maua nu'u e 2, 'o Kaikeve le tasi, 'o Ukakolo e pito i uta; i le 'ua moe ai la mātou malaga; 'ua fiafia tele i lātou, 'ua la'u mai mea taumafa e tele, 'ua la'u mai ma fāsie ma vai; 'ua 'ofu 'o lātou 'ofu ma fai 'o lātou lavalava, 'ua pei se lotu a fai; 'ua mata alolofa, i lātou. 'Ua goto le lā 'ua mātou fa'apoto-potoina i lātou 'o lea fai le lotu. 'Ua vave ona oso mai i lātou 'ua fiafia i lotu, 'ua taitasi ma fa'alologo 'ua pei lava ni tagata malamalama. 'Ua malama le taea 'ua alu pea le malaga, 'ua alu tonu lava i le tuasivi pito maualuga e mama'o i uta; 'ua matuā faigatā ala; 'ua sopo i luga i tumutumu o mauga ma toe fa'aifo i lalo i vanu, 'ua na'o le a'e mauga ma ifo vanu. 'Ua lata ona goto le lā, 'ua mātou le mapu, 'ua leai sina malolō; 'ua sāvali lava sei taigoto le lā, 'ua maua le tasi nu'u e fā fai 'aai, 'ua igoa ia Tulumu. 'Ua moe ai le malaga, 'ua fiafia tele ai i lātou e pei ona faia e le nu'u 'ua mātou lua'i moe ai ananafi. 'Ua lata i le po 'ua maliu mai ali'i taitasi ma 'o lātou nu'u taitasi; 'o nu'u ia na lē ui ai la mātou malaga. Na maliu mai ali'i, 'ua 'o 'ofu i lātou i 'ofu tofia o le malō o Peretania, 'a 'o taulelea 'ua lavalava i 'ie fou. 'O nu'u nei na lātou osofia le malaga a le Alii ma leoleo i aso 'ua māvæ; sa
tau le taua, ona faiaina lea 'o i lātou; ona fai lea e le Kovano le leleiga ma ia atumu'u, 'ua fa'a 'ofu ali'i i ofu toafia ma fa'alavalava i tagata. Ua o'o mai i lātou ma mea taumafa e tele. Ua fesili Misi, po 'o le ā le ala na lātou o'o mai ai. 'Ua tali mai i lātou: 'ua mātou o'o mai e leoleo i lau malaga i le tuasivi ina nei osofia la 'outou malaga e nu'u e tele i le tuasivi; auā 'afai e o'o se faigatā ia te 'oe, 'o lea lafo mai le sala e le malō i luga ia te i mātou, ina 'ua mātou le tausia 'oe. 'Ua fa'afetai Misi ia te i lātou, 'ua fai atu Misi: e tasi le mea 'ua faigatā ai 'o mea taumafa e le lava i luga o le mauga, ma le tasi o isi tagata e leai ni 'ofu, anei e oti i le malūlū i luga o mauga. Ona tu'ua lea 'o le toatele, 'ua na o alii 'uma ma tagata malolosi e fai nai 'ofu, 'ua mātou malaga fa'atasi. 'Ua malama le taeao, 'ua usu le malaga, 'ua mātou sopoia le tumutumu o le tasi mauga e igoa ia Ekonakolo, e 2500 ft. le maualuga; 'ua mātou toe fa'aifo i le tasi itu 'ua alu pea; 'ua lata i le po 'ua maua atu le tasi nu'u e igoa ia Koliko; 'o le aso 5 lea o Julai, 'o le aso toona'i foi lea; i le ua aso sā ai la mātou malaga. 'Ua o'o i le asogafua 'ua fa'alavelaveina la mātou malaga i timuga. 'Ua o'o i le aso lua 'o le aso 8 lea o Julai; 'ua lāoifē le aso 'ua mātou sopoia le mauga maualuga i le taeao lava 'ua o'o i le afiafi. 'Ua lata ona goto le lā 'ua mātou maua le vaeluaga o le mauga; 'o le mauga 'ua moe ai la mātou malaga. 'Ua malama le taeao 'ua mātou taumafai i le tumutumu o le mauga, 'ua tusa ma futu e 8300 le maualuga, 'o le mauga lenei e fai ai le tala fa'avavau a Niu Kini. Fai mai 'a otī i lātou, 'o le mauga lenā e potopoto i ai 'o lātou agaga mai fai ai a lātou siva. I le 'ua mātou fesili: 'o fea ea 'o fai ai siva a o 'outou tupuga na otī? 'Ua lātou tali mai: 'o i ai i se isi mauga. 'Ua mātou ta'u atu i ai: e sesē lo 'outou taofi; 'o tātou agaga e tasi lava le mea e taunu'u 'uma i ai, 'ua mātou tusi i ai
le lagi. 'Ua tali i látou: e 'ese le mea e o'o i ai 'o 'outou agaga, 'o le lagi lea, 'a 'o mātou e ta'a lava 'o mātou agaga i luga i mauga. 'Ua mātou matua fa'aali atu le tonu i le mea e taunu'u i ai 'o tātou agaga. 'Ua fai mai i látou: e moni lava, ai lava 'o le tonu 'atoaatoa lea.

'O le aso 9 'ua liliu mai ai la mātou malaga i le tuasivi. 'O le malaga 'atoa e amata mai i Kalaikoro e o'o i le tumu-tumu o le mauga lenā e 70 ma ona tupu maila; ae 'a faitaulia o'i le matafaga e 100 ma ona tupu maila, 'o le mea lea na fai ai le malaga.

'Ua tumu lenei atumauga i tagata fa'apaupau, 'ua leaga 'o látou fale. 'Ua momoe fa'atasi ma pua'a, 'ua vali mālala 'o látou tino, tā te fefe fua lava pea vaai i 'o látou mata. 'Ua fo'i le malaga, 'ua mātou toe sopoia nu'u ia: 'o Elena Kolo, Ulona Kolo, Polavale, Mataka, Mitikō, Elima Kolo. Sa mātou aso sā i lea nu'u, 'ua mātou usu i le asogafu 'ua mātou sopoia nisi nu'u, 'a 'ua toe taunu'u atu lava i Kalaikoro.

NOTES

A'ega, ascent.—Niu Kini, New Guinea.—mata'i 'o M.S.; this refers to the head of a Mission Station in Samoa, who made this journey with some natives.—ma le fia, that... be willing.—atu mauga, mountainous country.—sopo, exceed, thwart.—'ua lata ona... , near to... —e pito i uta, more, the farthest inland.—la'u mai, bring near.—ma fāfiē ma vai, both wood and water.—lotu, public worship, to perform religious service, go to church.—mata alofa, friendly.—taitasi, one each.—tagata malamalama, cultivated, civilised people.—'ua malama le taeao; this is a stock phrase, meaning, "as the day breaks."—'ua na 'o le a'e... it went always uphill and downhill.—
nu'u fai'aai, small, scattered villages.—'ofu tofia, official uniform.—faiaina, conquered.—fai le leleiga ma, reconcile oneself with somebody.—sala, punishment.—anei e oti . . ., it could kill anyone.—'o le to'atele (plural).—usu, rise early.—ft. = futu = foot, feet.—aso sā, Sunday; it is here used as a verb, Sunday rest.—timuga, rain-shower.—lāofie (see The Adjective: derived from lā, sun, sunny.—fai mai . . ., it is said . . .—agaga, soul.—tusi here means, to name.—'ese, high, far.—ta'a, to guide.—ai lava (see Vocabulary), it must be . . . indeed.—pua'a, pig.—tā = tātou.—fo'i, return.

**XXIII**

'O LE TUSI MAI NIU SILANI

Oamaru, Niu Silani, Fep. 18, 1902.

Le 'au uso e!

Si 'o mā alofa atu! 'ua mā saunia lenei tusi e fai mai mea tātou te feiloa'i ai. . . .

'O le tasi mea 'ou te fia ta'u atu ia te 'outou. 'O sina tala i la mā malaga i Rotorua, 'o le nu'u lea 'ua ta'ua ona 'o vaitoloto vevela 'ua i ai, ma le tasi mea, 'o tagata e to'atele 'ua asiasi i ai e sailiili matagi. Sa mā malaga atu i Rotorua mai Aukilani 'o lo lā va pe 80 maila, 'ua 'atoa itula e 9 sa mā ō i ai i le nofoa afi ona fa'atoa taunu'u ai lea.

E i ai le fale ma'i i Rotorua 'ua saunia mo tagata mama'i ina ia lātou ta'e'ele ai i le vai. 'Ua siomia le fale i le fanua 'ua teuteu lelei, 'ua matagofie lava la'au 'ese'ese 'ua i ai. Sa mā savavali i le fanua, ona mā vaaia lea 'o punavai e lua. Sa ofo le loto auā 'ua 'ese ia punavai i punavai 'uma auā 'ua vevela lava le vai, peiseai 'ua i luga o se afi tele;
'ua oso le ausa i luga e pei 'o se umu tele 'ua pusa. E lēmafai ona ta'ele se tasi i le punavai 'ua fanua auā ua vevela tele lava le vai; 'ua siomia foi le punavai i le puipui ina ne'i pa'ū'ū i ai tagata ma oti ai. Sa mā tete'ī ina 'ua mā matamata i ai; 'a 'ua taitaiina le vai vevela i paipa e o'o ta'ele'ga 'ese'ese i totonu o le fale ma'i, i le 'ua fa'ao-poopoaina i ai sina vai malulu, ona fa'atoa mafai lea ona ta'ele ai.

'Ua 'atoa aso e lua sa mā i ai i lenā nu'u. Sa mā matamata i mea 'ese'ese e ofo ai i maua i itula 'uma. Sa mā tafafo i le auvai o le vaitoloto o Rotorua ona iloa ai lea 'o le ausa 'ua oso i luga ai le 'ele'ele. Sa mā asiasia i le Maori Pa (‘o le 'aa lea) 'o Ohinemutu; e le fa'aagāina se afi e tagata o lenā nu'u auā 'ua faigofie ona tao 'o a lātou mea e 'ai i omo laiti 'ua elia i le foga'ele'ele.

Sa mā o atu foi i se isi Maori Pa o Whakare-warewa lea; 'ua faigata 'ona fa'amalamalama atu mea e ofo ai sa mā matamata ai. E sa i tagata ona soona savali ne'i pa'ū'ū i lātou i se pū 'ua i ai le vai vevela. 'O lea aso ma lea aso foi 'ua oso iluga le vai ai pū 'ese'ese pe tusa ma le umi o se niu 'o le maualuga o le vai 'ua oso a'e.

Pagā lava! o le mea lea e ofo tele ai tagata; sa mā fa'alogoina le vevela i o mā seevae, ona mā punonou ai lea 'ua iloa 'ua vevela le foga'ele'ele ma ma'a 'o i ai. Sa mā vaaia foi le vaitefe 'ua oso mai i lalo o le palapala e o'o i le fogatai. Ona pā ai lea 'o le palapala 'ua pa'ō e pei 'o se fana pe a pā.

A 'o le mea sa mā fefefe ai 'o Tikitera lea, 'o le nu'u lea e pei 'o Sotoma ma Komora, e iai se vaitefe vevela ma le afi. 'Ua leaga le manogi i lenā nu'u auā 'ua tele le teio 'ua fefiloa'i ma le vai i punavai vevela. E i ai foi pū tetele 'ua tutumu i le palapala 'ua fefiloai ma le sua'ū. Sa taitaiina i mātou ma nisi tagata sa matamata ai e le
tasi alii auā 'ua faigatā i tagata ne'i soona savavali, ona pā lea 'o le foga 'ele'ele i tafatafa o punavai vevela, auā pa'ū'ū i ai 'ua oti. 'Ua o'o i mātou i le tasi itu o le puna palapala tele, ona lele a'e lea 'o le ausa i le 'ua sūsū i mātou i le ausa tele 'ua oso mai. 'Ua to'a foi le palapala 'ua filogia ma le suaū'ū, 'a 'ua puna pea, 'ua sili ona vevela i le suavai 'ua puna; 'o le fua o le vevela o le palapala 'ua 232° Fahrenheit.

'O sina tala pu'upu'u lenei i mea sa mā matamata ai ma 'ua ofo tele ai i maua, 'a 'ou te lēmafai ona fa'aali atu lelei le uiga moni o mea fa'apena.

Sa mā foi atu i Okilani ma nonofo ai ni nai aso; ona toe malaga atu lea i Maungaturoto, Raglun, Napier, Wellington, Lyttleton, Christchurch ma Oamaru, 'ua mātou fa'atasi ai ma le tama'itai 'o Makerita 'ua 'outou māsani.

O le a toe malaga atu i mātou ma Makerita i le aso nei e taunu' u lava i Dunedin.

Ia fa'amaniua 'outou e lo tātou Alii. Ia tausia pea i tātou 'uma seia o'o i le aso tātou te toe fa'atasi ai.

O FeLENI ma Olive.

NOTES

Niu Silani, New Zealand.—Si'o mā . . . (stock phrase) are greeted.—tātou (see third person plural of the Personal Pronouns).—vaituloto, sea.—saili matagi, have a change of air, take a bath.—fale ma'i, hospital.—oso a'e, rise, get up.—puipui, trellis.—paipa, tube, pipe.—malūhū, cold.—omo, pit, ditch.—fa'amalamalama, explain, interpret.—Pagā lava!, exclamation.—foga'ele'ele, ground, earth.—pū, cave.—ai pu, from the cave.—pā, explode, shoot fire, detonate.—filo, mix, mingle.—puna, cook, boil.
REMARKS ON SOME OF THE POINTS OF SIMILARITY BETWEEN THE SAMOAN AND THE TAHITIAN AND MAORI LANGUAGES

As already mentioned in the Introduction, Samoan has its root in the Malayan-Polynesian languages, which are spoken, with many varying dialects, from Madagascar, throughout the South Seas, to Hawaii. These root-tongues are divided into the Malayan, Melanesian, and Polynesian. The two latter, being of very low origin, have few consonants, and the word-construction is primitive. The grammatical forms are mostly joined to the root by means of particles, and usually no distinction is made in the form of a word between the singular and plural number, the same applying to the difference between active and passive verbs, and between their moods and tenses.

The Polynesian languages have a strong relationship to one another, very much in the same way that certain European ones have, and present no difficulties to the learner when he has a fair grasp of one of them.

There is a great resemblance, and much in common between the Samoan, Tahitian, and Maori languages.

TAHITIAN

This language has an alphabet of thirteen letters: five vowels, a, e, i, o, u, and eight consonants, f, h, m, n, p, r, t, and v. Introduced words occasionally contain l, k, and z.
The vowels are all pronounced as those in Samoan and are short. If it is desired to lengthen a vowel it is indicated thus, ^. Ex.: hoë, one. This long vowel also takes the accent, which otherwise is borne by the last syllable but one.

\( F \) is pronounced as in Samoan, but often has the sound of \( v \) or \( h \). Ex.: vahine = fāfine; haaputu = fa'apoto, etc.

\( H \), which is absent in Samoan, frequently occurs in Tahitian and corresponds to the \( f \) and \( s \) in Samoan. Ex.: tahi = tasi; hara = sala; anahi = asi. In words where the Samoan \( s \) has been introduced it has a pronunciation faintly resembling \( ch \).

\( M \) and \( n \) are sounded as in Samoan, the \( n \) having a slightly nasal (\( ng \)) twang, especially where it takes the place of the Samoan \( g \), which, however, does not often occur.

\( P \) has the same sound as in Samoan.

\( R \) is much in use, and mostly appears in place of the Samoan \( l \) and \( g \). Ex.: faaroo = fa'alogo; ratou = lātou; huruhuru = fulufulu; raau = la'au, etc.

\( T \) is the Samoan \( t \) and replaces \( l \). Ex.: e teie = lenei.

\( V \), pronounced as in Samoan, is a substitute for the Samoan \( v \), \( f \), and \( ' \). Ex.: rave = ave; vahine = fāfine; vau = 'au; avae = vae.

Either an \( n \), \( r \), or, more generally, \( ' \), is used instead of the Samoan \( g \). Ex.: i'oa = igoa; fanauraa = fanauga; ra'i = lagi; mou'a = mauga, etc.

There are no double consonants in Tahitian, and all words end with a vowel.

The Tahitian is quite as punctilious in his speech as the
SIMILARITY BETWEEN SAMOAN,

Samoan, but often employs a variety of forms promiscuously; especially is this so with the verb.

*Te* is the article, which corresponds to the Samoan *le*. Ex.: *te fare* = 'o le fale. Its declension in the singular is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td><em>te fare ra</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td><em>o te fare ra</em></td>
<td><em>Ra</em> is a particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td><em>i te fare ra</em></td>
<td>which almost always follows the substan-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td><em>i te fare ra</em></td>
<td>tive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td><em>e te fare ra</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With proper names the article *o* is used. Declension: *o, a, ia, ia, e*.

The plural is a little involved. Either the singular number only is used in its place, in such cases where no confusion of meaning is likely to arise, or, in order especially to emphasise the plural, particles are placed before the noun concerned. Ex.: *na, mau, pue*.

*Na* is employed when dealing with numbers, and corresponds to the Samoan *ni*. Ex.: *na fare e hitu*, seven houses.

*Mau* is used in ordinary speech and has no reference to any particular number; it corresponds to the Samoan *'o le 'au*. Ex.: *te mau Tahiti*, the Tahitians.

*Pue* is made use of: (1) Almost exclusively in relation to persons. (2) When a large definite number is referred to. Ex.: *e pue ravaai hoi raua?* What are those two people doing there? The declension of the plural is identical with that of the singular.

Abstract nouns are only used in the singular.

Occasionally, when a word stands at the beginning of a sentence, *o te* is employed, not *te*, as is the case with the Samoan *'o le*.

The substantive has only one gender.
The dual number is expressed by *toopiti*, both, the two. *Ex.: na vahine e toopiti*, the two women.

The adjective follows the noun to which it belongs. *Ex.: te fare api*, the new house; *te hoé raau maitai*, a good tree. It is invariable in the singular, but now and then an added syllable is introduced to denote a plural meaning. *Ex.: maitai; maitatai* (plural). This is, however, not a general rule.

With regard to comparison, the method is similar to that of the Samoan adjective. *Ex.: te mou’a rahí i te fare*, the mountain is bigger than the house; literally, the mountain big to the house. If the adjective stands alone, without a noun, the comparative is expressed by *pu, puai*. *Ex.: puai rahí*, much bigger.

There is no way of indicating the superlative degree: the plain adjective has to do duty for this as a rule, but sometimes the word *rave* is placed before it by way of giving emphasis to it.

The personal pronouns are very similar to the Samoan ones and are given here briefly: *o vau*, I; *o oe*, thou; *o ia*, he; *to tatou*, we; *to outou*, you; *o ratou*, they. Dual: *o mava* (exclusive), we two; *to tava* (inclusive), we two; *to orua*, you two; *o rava*, they two. When these are placed after the verb the *o* is omitted. Instead of *o vau*, I, *‘au* is often used when following a verb.

**Declension**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>o vau</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>no ’u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ia ’u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ia ’u</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*O oe* is declined in the same way. *O ia*, he, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>oia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>no na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ia ’na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ia ’na</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The rest of the personal pronouns are declined in precisely the same manner.

The possessive pronouns are also quite simple and formed as in Samoan.

**Singular**

- Nom. *tau, or a'u, my*
- Gen. *no tau*
- Dat. *i tau*
- Acc. *i tau*

*to, or to oe, thy*
*tana, Gen., no ta'na, etc., his*
*to matou (excl.), to tatou (incl.), our*
*to outou, your*
*to ratou, their*

**Dual**

*to maua, to orua, to raua, our two, both our*

**Plural**

*ta'u, my*
*to oe, thy*
*ta na, his*

The remainder are declined in the same way as the singular numbers.

The suitable personal pronoun is preferably used in place of the possessive, as a rule. *Ex.: te fare na oe,* thy house, the house of thee; instead of, *to fare.*

The demonstrative pronouns are:

**Singular**

-o teie, this
-o tera, that

The plural forms of the above run in a like manner to the singular, especially where the nouns are formed of plural words, and are treated like the singular 'o le 'au in Samoan.
For the purpose of emphasising o teie the word nei (here) is often added to it. Ex.: o teie nei taata, this man here. O tera is not used very much. The demonstrative pronouns partake more of the nature of substantives and adjectives. Ex.: teie nei mau mea atoa, all these.

The relative pronouns correspond to the Samoan ones: o te, he who = 'o le. The declension is like that of the substantive. Ex.: ehoroa 'tu i te ani ia oe ra, give to him who asks of thee. O tei, or to tei (those who), is the plural.

The use of these is quite as involved, and yet, at the same time, as simple as in Samoan. Ex.: e faaore mai i ta matou hara, mai ia matou atoa a faaore i tei hara ia matou nei. Samoan: ia e fa'amagalo i a te i mātou i a mātou agasala e pei 'o i mātou fo'i ona matou fa' amagaloia atu i ē 'ua agasala ma ia te i mātou. (See 'o le talo a le Alii, in the Reading Selections.)

O tei, or o te taata, is everyone who . . . (see Example in last paragraph on the RELATIVE PRONOUN in the Grammar). This in Tahitian is: o te taata i riri noa i tona taeae e Raka, e au ia ia 'na te sunederi.

The interrogative pronouns are: o vai, who? Ex.: o vai oe? who art thou? eaha, what? Ex.: eaha to oe hinaara? what is your wish?

The declension is:

Nom. o vai
Gen. no vai
Dat. ia vai

The accusative, whom, is expressed thus: o vai ta outou e imi na? whom are you looking for?—literally, who is, you look for something?

The indefinite pronouns: tahi, another; tahi taata, some, several: every, each, is translated by the plural,
SIMILARITY BETWEEN SAMOAN,

te mau — atoa. Ex.: te mau taata atoa ... every man ... ; te taata, somebody, anyone; te taata, with the negative, e ore = e ore te taata. nobody; te mau atoa, atoa, all; rave rahi, many; iti, few; te taata, or te mau taata, one, people, they (French, on); na, several.

The reflexive pronoun is atoa. Ex.: o vau atoa nei, I myself. This latter is not very much used.

The verb, in many respects, is not so complicated as the Samoan, it being invariable in all moods and tenses, both in the singular and plural; only a few allowing of reduplication in the plural. Ex.: hoo atura, to sell. Plural, hohoo atura.

There is an active and passive form, and the tenses are: Present, First Past, Second Past, Future, and the Imperative and Infinitive Moods.

The present tense is formed by prefixing the particle e or te to the verb. Haere, to go.

**Singular**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e haere au, or te haere au,</td>
<td>I go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e haere oe, or te haere oe,</td>
<td>thou goest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e haere oia, or te haere oia,</td>
<td>he goes, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dual**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e haere maua, we two (both) go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e haere orua, you two go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e haere raua, they two go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e haere matou, we go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e haere ou tou, you go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e haere ratou, they go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The personal pronouns can also be placed before the verb.

E is generally employed in the narrative form of speech, and te to denote a definite action in the present. Ex.: te parau atu nei vau ia oe, I tell you.
The first past tense takes the particle *ua* in front of the verb. *Taparahi*, to kill.

- *ua taparahi vau*, I killed
- *ua taparahi, oe* thou killedst
- *ua taparahi oia*, he killed, etc.

The second past tense is distinguished by the particle *i* before the verb. *Faaroo*, to hear, perceive.

- *i faaroo vau*, I have heard
- *i faaroo oe*, thou hast heard
- *i faaroo oia*, he has heard, etc.

The two forms of past tense just given are not used in continuous narrative, the bare verb being sufficient, in the native mind, to convey the idea of an action already accomplished.

The future is indicated in exactly the same way as the present tense and formed by the particle *e*. *Ex.: e tae vau*, I will come; *e tae oe*, thou wilt come, etc.

The imperative mood takes the particle *e* or *a* before the verb. *Ex.: a haere!*, go!; *a haere oe!*; *a rare i te pane*, take the bread. *E* is used when it is wished to express a gentler form of command.

The infinitive mood is a double one, according to whether "to" or "in order to" is the intended meaning. *Ia* is used before the verb in the first instance, and *e* in the latter. *Ex.: mata'u oia ia haere*, he was afraid to come. This rule is not invariably observed, though.

The negative of the imperative is *eiaha*, followed by the present tense. *Ex.: eiaha oe e faahapa*, do not lie!

The negative particle in general use is, *aore*, or *eore*, which always commences a sentence. *Ex.: aore au i haere mai*, I have not come.
There is no participle known to the Tahitian, but a peculiar verb-substantive takes its place. This is the particle *raa*, which is subjoined to the verb. *Ex.*: *ua hi'o atura te taata atoa ia 'na i te haereraa*, the people saw him coming; literally, in the coming. *Raa* corresponds to the Samoan *ga* (*fanauraa* = *fanauiga*).

The passive is formed similarly to the Samoan, by affixing various particles to the verb; the most commonly used being *hia*. *Ex.*: *taparahihia*, to be killed; *hi'ohia*, to be seen, etc. The conjugation is exactly the same as in the active form of the verb.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>te hi'ohia vau,</em></td>
<td>I am seen.</td>
<td><em>Present.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ua hi'ohia oe,</em></td>
<td>thou wast seen.</td>
<td><em>First Past.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>i hi'ohia oia,</em></td>
<td>he has been seen.</td>
<td><em>Second Past.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>e hi'ohia matou,</em></td>
<td>we shall be seen.</td>
<td><em>Future.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The last example quoted can also be used in place of the present tense. To indicate a future action, *atoa*, together with a curious word-formation, is employed, viz., *hi'o — atoa — hia*. *Ex.*: *e faaino — atoa — hia oia*, he will be condemned. If, however, the verb should be a compound one, such as *hopoi-ë*, to take away, this form does not apply; the simple one, *hopoi-ë-hia*, being used instead.

The auxiliary verb *to be* is usually not expressed. *Ex.*: *ovau teie*, it is I, or *o vau nei ia*. The negative is *aita* or *aore*.

The verb *to have* is also, as in Samoan, formed by using the dative. *Ex.*: *e tau fare na'u*, I have a house; literally, to me is my house. *Aita* = not. *Ex.*: *aita a ratou pane*, they have no bread.

There are many compound verbs which are, in some cases, preceded by *faa* or *haa*, with the same meaning as
The numerals are very like the Samoan cardinal numbers: hoē, or tahi, one; piti, two; toru, three; maha, four; pae, five; ono, six; hitu, seven; varu, eight; iva, nine; ahuru, ten; tino ahuru ma hoē, eleven; tino ahuru ma piti, twelve; piti ahuru, twenty, etc.; maha ahuru, forty; hanere, a hundred; tino hanere ma hoē, a hundred and one; tausani, a thousand.

Originally the Tahitians could only count up to ten; the necessary numbers after this are derived partly from the Samoan and partly from English. The numerals are placed before the word to which they belong, the latter taking the genitive case. Ex.: e varu o te rui, eight days.

The ordinals have the article added, as, o te hitu, the seventh. They take their place either before, governing the genitive, like the cardinals, or after the word they accompany. O te fare piti, the second house. The first would be, o te matahiapa.

Ia is a numeral adverb, which, when placed before a number, denotes "times." Ex.: ia toru, three times, thrice; but the fourth time would be, te maharaa.

All prepositions govern the accusative. Ex. i roto i te fare, in the house. Also the answer to the question, where? where to? is in the accusative.

Mai, from; i tae, to, towards; i nia i, on, upon; i nia i ropu, in the middle of it, amidst it; no nia mai, down; mai, since; i raro, outside; i roto, inside, etc.

To give a complete list here of all adverbs and conjunctions would not be possible within the limits of these Remarks, as they do not constitute a complete grammar of the languages concerned, but merely a means by which the principal features of Samoan and Tahitian may be
SIMILARITY BETWEEN SAMOAN,

compared. From the foregoing the close relationship which exists between them will easily be seen, and we will now draw a brief comparison between Samoan and the native language of New Zealand.

MAORI

The Maori tongue is also euphonically poor, there being five vowels, a, e, i, o, u, and ten consonants, h, k, m, n, ng, p, r, t, w, and wh.

The vowels all have the sound of the Samoan ones.

H corresponds to the Samoan s and f. Ex.: wakina = fasine.

K replaces the Samoan '. Ex.: kua = 'ua; katoatoa = atoatoa.

M and n are as in Samoan.

Ng takes the place of the Samoan g. Ex.: rangi = lagi.

P is pronounced as in Samoan.

R is the substitute for the Samoan l, as, ratou = lātou.

T is the Samoan one, and sometimes corresponds to the l in that language. Ex.: ko te tama = 'o le tama.

W resembles the Samoan v.

Wh replaces the Samoan f, but it is pronounced more softly than f.

For accentuation of syllables, see the Grammar.

The article is ko te = 'o le. Ex.: ko te tangata = 'o le tagata. The noun, which can only boast one gender, takes the article ko te in the singular and nga in the plural. The declension is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>ko te tangata, the man</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>o te tangata, of the man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ki te tangata, to the man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ki te tangata, the man</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Plural
Nom. o nga ariki, the chiefs
Gen. o nga ariki, of the chiefs
Dat. ki nga ariki, to the chiefs
Acc. ki nga ariki, the chiefs

The article ko always precedes proper names. The vocative takes e, as, e te ariki, chief!

The adjective comes after the word it qualifies and is invariable. Ex.: ko te maunga tiketike, the big mountain. Comparison is the same as in Tahitian. The comparative is not expressed, and the word compared takes the accusative case: i te. The superlative is formed by rawa. Ex.: ko te iti rawa, the (very = rawa) little.

Personal Pronouns

Singular
ko tuku, I:
ko koe, thou:
ko ia, he:

Plural
ko koutou, you:
to ratou, they:

Dual
ko orua, you two, both of you
to raua, they two, both of them

The declension of the personal pronouns is the same as for nouns.

ko tuku, I
a tuku, or o au, of me
ki a au, to me
ki a au, me

The rest of the pronouns are declined in the same way. Should the personal pronoun follow the verb—as more often than not it does—instead of ko tuku, ahau must be substituted in the first person singular.
SimilariTy Between samoan

Possessive Pronouns

Singular

ko taku, my
ko tou, thy
ko tona, his
to mālou, our
to koutou, your
to ratou, their

Dual

to maua, our two (both our)
to orua, your two
to rawa, their two

The article ko, or to, gives place to o in the plural, and the k of the pronoun is omitted.

Plural

o oku, my
o ou, thy
o ona, or o ana, his
o matou, our
o outhou, your
o ratou, their

Dual

o maua, our two, both our
o orua, your two
o rawa, their

The declension is exactly like that of the personal pronoun.

Demonstrative Pronouns

tenei, this; enei, these.
tena, that; era, those

As in Tahitian, they are used adjectively and substantively.
Relative Pronouns

The relative pronouns greatly resemble the Tahitian ones in construction, and in their application they are also alike throughout. (See the Samoan Relative Pronouns in the Grammar.)

- \textit{ki te tetahi}, he who
- \textit{te hunga}, those who, those which
- \textit{nga tangata katoa}, everyone who
- \textit{nga mea katoa}, that which

(See example in last paragraph on Relative Pronouns in the Grammar.)

\textit{A ki te a mea} (speak, say) \textit{tetahi ki tona teina}: \textit{Weirangi!} \textit{ka tika kia koomititia}.

Interrogative Pronouns

- Nom. \textit{ko whai}, who?
- Gen. \textit{no whai}, of whom?
- Dat. \textit{ia whai}, to whom?
- Acc. \textit{ko whai}, whom?
- \textit{he aha}, what?
- \textit{ma te aha}, with which, with what?

Indefinite Pronouns

\textit{Tokomaha}, many; \textit{ruarua}, a few, some; \textit{nga tangata}, one, people, they; \textit{nga tangata katoa}, all; \textit{etahi}, some, several; \textit{tetahi}, somebody, anybody; \textit{kahore tetahi}, no one.

The reflexive pronouns are hardly ever expressed in Maori, reliance having to be placed upon the context of a sentence to supply this deficiency.

The Verb

The verb is simple in construction and, in conjugation, very like the Tahitian. There is a distinction between the active and passive, and the tenses are the same as those in Samoan.
The active verb, present tense, is formed with *te*.

- *te kite ahau*, I see
- *te kite koe*, thou seest
- *te kite kia*, he sees
- *te kite matou*, we see
- *te kite koutou*, you see
- *te kite ratou*, they see, etc.

**Past Tense I.** is distinguished by *ka*.

- *ka haere ahau*, I can
- *ka haere koe*, thou canst
- *ka haere kia*, he can, etc.

**Past Tense II.** takes *i*.

- *i whakamahara ahau*, I have taught
- *i whakamahara koe*, thou hast taught
- *i whakamahara kia*, he has taught, etc.

**Past Tense III.**, which corresponds most nearly to the pluperfect, is formed by *kua*.

- *kua kawe ahau*, I had brought
- *kua kawe matou*, we had brought
- *kua kawe ratou*, they had brought

**The Future** takes *e*.

- *e ora ahau*, I shall live
- *e ora koe*, thou shalt live, etc.

The meaning of the first past tense often applies to a future action already concluded when another begins, and resembles more nearly the second future in European verbs, such as, *I shall have done*. *Ex.*: When you (shall) see this and that, you (will) know . . . *Otira ka kite koutou . . . ko reia koutou mohia ai . . .*: literally, when you (shall) have seen that . . . Such phrases are of constant occurrence.

The imperative is introduced by the particle *kia*. *Ex.*: *kia haere*, go! The particle is frequently omitted.
The negative form of the imperative is effected by the particle kaua, kei. Ex.: kaua e tutaki, do not run.

The infinitive is distinguished as follows: te = to . . .; ki te = in order to . . .

The negative used with other moods of the verb is kahore or kihai, which stands at the beginning of the sentence. Ex.: kahore ahau e mohia ki tena pa, I do not know that place.

The passive form is construed with the same particles as the active, and is only distinguished from the latter by affixing the syllables tia, a, or kina. Ex.: akiri, to throw; akiritia, be thrown; kitea, be seen.

| te kitea ahau,  | I am seen     |
| ka kitea ahau,  | I was seen    |
| i kitea ahau,   | I have been seen |
| kue kitea ahau, | I had been seen |
| e kitea ahau,   | I shall be seen |

**Numerals**

Cardinals: kotahi, one; rua, two; toru, three; wha, four; rima, five; ono, six; whitu, seven; waru, eight; iwa, nine; tekaun, ten; kotahi tekaun ma tahi, eleven; kotahi tekaun ma rua, twelve; rua tekaun, twenty; toru tekaun, thirty; kotahi rau, one hundred; rua rau, two hundred; mano, a thousand.

The cardinal numbers take their place before the word to which they apply, the latter being in the plural, indicated by the article. Ex.: rima nga taro, five taros; kotahi nga whare, ten houses.

The ordinals consist of the cardinal numerals preceded by the article, and come before the word they accompany, governing the genitive. Ex.: o te rima o nga rakau, the fifth tree; te tuatahi, the first; te muri, the last.
Numerals of multiplication are unknown to the Maori. The number of prepositions, adverbs, and conjunctions in the language is not considerable, and they bear a great resemblance to those in Samoan.

For purposes of comparison the Selections for Reading, Nos. IV. and V., are here appended, rendered into Tahitian and Maori.

**TAHITIAN**

**TE PURE RA A TE FATU**

E to matou Mētua i te ao ra, ia raa te oe i'oa. Ia tae i to oe ra hau. Ia haapaohia to oe hinaaro i te fenua nei, mai tei te ao atoa na. Ho mai i te maa e au ia matou i teie nei mahana. E faaore mai i ta matou hara, mai ia matou atoa e faaore i tei hara ia matou nei. E eiaha e faarue ia matou ia roohia—noa—hia e te ati, e faaora râ ia matou i te ino. Amene.

**TE PARABOLE RA A TE SAMARIA.—Luka x. 30.**

Te hoê taata no Jerusalema i te haereraa i Jeriko, roohia ihora i te nānaeiā haru, taratarahia ihora tana ahu e ratou, e paruparu ihora oia, haere atura, faarue ihora ia 'na, ua fatata i te pohe. Ua haere noa maira te hoê tahu'a na taua e'a na, e ite atura oia ia 'na, faahahau è aturâ, na te tahi pae e'a 'tura i te haere. E te hoê ati Levi hoi e te haerera na taua e'a ra, e fatata maira taua vahi ra, e ite atura ia 'na, ohipa è aturâ na te tahi pae e'a. Te hoê taata râ no Samaria i haere noa i to 'na haerera, e tae atura oia ia 'na, aroha 'tura ; haere atura i pihai iho, ua nimi ihora i te hinu e te naina i roto i te mau puta no 'na ra ; vehi ihora, e haaparahi atura ia 'na i nia i tana iho
puaa, aratai atura ia ’na i te fare tipaerea, utuutu atura ia ’na. E ao a’era, ia haere ē oia ra, ua rave a’era oia i e piti moni veo, tuu atura i te taata fare ra, na ô atura ia ’na: E utuutu oe i teie nei taata, e ia riro atoa ta oe ra moni, na ’u ia e hopoi atu i te hoo ia oe ia ho’i mai au ra.

MAORI

KO TE INOI O TE ARIKI

E to matou Matua i te rangi, kia tapu tou ingoa; kia tae mai tou rangatiratanga; kia meatia tau e pai ai ki runga ki te whenua, kia rite ano ki to te rangi. Homai ki a matou aiane he taro ma matou ma tenei ra. Murua o matou hara, me matou hoki e muru nei i o te hunga e hara ani ki a matou. Aua hoki matou e kaweia kia whakawaia; engari whakaoranga matou i te kino. Amine.

KO TE KUPU I WHAKARITEA KI TE HAMARI.—Ruk. x. 30.

I haere atu tetahi tangata i Hiruharama ki Heriko, a ka tutaki ki nga kai pahua, na, ka huia ona e ratou, ka tukitukia ia, a haere ana, whakarerea iho ia, me te mea kua mate. Na, ko tetehi tohunga e haere noa ana i taua ara: a, tona kitenga i a ia, ninihī ke atu ana na tahaki. I pena hoki tetahi Riwati, tae kau ki taua wahi, ka haere ka titiro, ninihī ke atu ana na tahaki. Na ko tetahi Hamari e haere ana ki nga whenua, te taenga ki a ia, ka kite i a ia, ka aroha, na, ka haere atu, ka takai i ona patungia, ringihia iho ki te hinu ki te waina, ka whakanoho i a ia ki tona ake kararehe a kaweia ana ia ki te whare tira, atawhaitia ana ia. I te aonga ake, i tona haerenga, ka tongohia e ia e rua nga pene, e hoatu ana ki te tangata i te whare, ka mea ki a ia: māu ia e tiaki; a ki te maha atu āu mea e pau, maku koe e utu ina hoki mai ahau.
VOCABULARY

ENGLISH-SAMOAN AND SAMOAN-ENGLISH

Nearly all the words of everyday use in Samoa are to be found in this Vocabulary. The nouns appear, as a rule, in their simple form with the article omitted. When fa’a is found following a Samoan word it indicates that this particular one is also formed with the prefix fa’a. Ex.: Remembrance, manatuga, or fa’amanatuga; to fill, tumu, or fa’atumu.

Such words as those formed with fa’a, tau, ta’u (see Grammar) are not included under these prefixes, but must be sought under their root-word. Ex.: fa’a’ofu, to dress: see ’ofu, etc.

The words appearing in the Grammar and Selections for Reading are not incorporated in this Vocabulary.

In order to avoid any likelihood of doubt as to the part of speech of a word, it is indicated in abbreviated form where necessary. Noun (n.); adjective (adj.); adverb (adv.); conjunction (conj.); etc. The verbs are distinguished by the preposition to.

For an explanation of Chief-word, see Grammar immediately preceding Syntax.

ENGLISH-SAMOA

A
able, to be, māfai
above, aloft, i luga
abundance, māu
accept, to, masalo, tali
accomplish, to, fa’aiu, fa’ auma
account (n.), tusi o le aitalafu
accuse, to, moli
accustomed to, to be, māsani
acquainted with, to become, maimoa
acquire, earn, to, mau
act, perform an action, to, aga, fai

100
add, subjoin, to, fa'a'opo'opo
address, to, fai atu, tautala i ai
admonish, to, apoapoa'i, fa'a —
adorn, to, teu
adultery, to commit (see under commit)
advise, fono
advise, to, filifili, taupulepule
afraid, to be, fa'avaivai le lotu, fefe
afternoon, afiofi
against, e laga mai
agent, loia
air, breeze, savili, ea
all, 'uma
allow, to, fa'ano'i
almost, nearly, tai
alone, itua, tu'ufua toatasi
allowed, to be (see remarks on the future tense in Syntax)
altar, fata faitaulaga
alter, to, fa'aliu
ancestor, anamua
anchor, taualiga
anchor, to, tu'utaula
angel, agelu
anger, toasa
angry, ita, naui, toasã
animal (n.), manu
announce, to, fai atu
anoint, to, fa'au'u, u'u
answer (n.), tali
answer, to, tali
anxious, vaivai le loto
apart, goaogoa
apostle, apostelono
appear, to, fa'aali
appearance, fa'aaliga
applaud, to (with the hands) pati
applause, mālie, malieō!
apple, apo
apply oneself to, to, liu atu
approach, draw near, latalata
April, Apelila
ardent, jealous, fuā
arm (left), lima tauagavale
arm (right), lima taumatau
arm, weapon, 'auupega
armour, 'ofu tau
around, solo
arrange, to, pule
arrest, to, pu'e
arrival, 'o le taunu mai
arrive, to, mai i, o' o i, taunu mai
arrow, ā
as if, peiseai
ascend, to, atu a'e oso, a'e'a
ashamed, to be, mā
ashes, lefulefu
ask, question, to, fesili
associate with, to, feo'ai ma
associated with, to be, māsani
astonish, to, ofo, fa'a —
at, latalata, e lata ane
at last, finally, muliai
attain, reach to, taunu
attend to, to, migao, fa'aalo
attire (n.), 'ofu
attire, to, 'ofu
August, Aokuso
avarice, covetousness, mata-peapea
avaricious, greedy, mata'ā
avenge, to, tau'i ma sui
avoid, to, 'alo' ese
awake, to, ala
away, 'ese
axe, hatchet, to'i

B
baby, suckling, tama jesus
back (n.), toa (to turn the back, see under turn)
bacon, ga'o
bad, leaga, atili
badly behaved, umioleaga
bag (n.), taga, fagu pa'u (leather bag)
bake (by hot stones), to, tao
baker, faifalaa
balance, scales, fua
bald, tua
ball, saasaa, siva, polo
banana, fa'i
bandage (n.), fusi
banish, to, tafe
bank, shore (n.), 'auwai
bark (of a tree), pa'u
barren, arid, naumati, gase
barrow, truck, fata
basket, ato, etc
bathe, to, ta'ele, fa'amalū (chief-word)
bathing-place, ta'elega
bath room, potu ta'ele
be before anyone, to, lumanai
beach, shore (n.), 'auva'a
beam (of wood), utopoto
beard (n.), 'ava
beast of prey, manu feai
beat, strike, to, ta, po (with the hand)
beautiful, lelei, matalelei, mānaia
beckon, to, tālo
bed (n.), moega
bedroom, potu moe
bee, lago meli
beef, pulumatau
beer, pia
beetle, mogamoga
before (conj.), a e lei, a o lei, ina a
before, a short time ago, analeilā
beforehand, previously, anamua, muai
beg, request, to, aioi, ole, fa'atoga
begin, to, mata, afua
beginning, atamaga
behave foolishly, to, fa'avalea
behaviour, amio
believe, to, masalo, fa'atuatua, talitonu
bell (hand), tagitagi
beloved (adj.), pele
below, at the bottom, i lalo
bend, stoop, to, pynou
bent up, curved, fa'amo'umo'u
besides, e le gata i lea
besiege, to, siosio
betray, to, fa'aiata
beware of, to, 'alo'ese
Bible, tusi pai'a
bicycle, uila
bid farewell, to, fa'amāvai
big, large, tele, sili
big (in stature), 'ese
bill, beak, gutu
bind, to, fusi, nonoa (see make fast)
bind up (wounds, etc.), to, fa'asoo
bird, manu lele (plural, manu felele'i)
bishop, epikopo
bite, to, u
bitter, 'o'ona
black, uili uili
blacken, to, fa'auliuli
blacksmith, tu 'ifao
blame, to, vavao
blanket (woollen), 'ie māmoe
bless, to, fa'amanuia
blessing, manūia
blind, to, fa'atauaso
blind (adj.), mataivi, tautao
blind, to become, fa'atauaosina
blood (n.), toto
blood-vessel, ua
blossom (n.), fuga
blot out, efface, to, fe'ula
blow (the trumpet, etc.), to, ili, agi
board, plank (n.), laupapa
boast, to, mitamita
boastful, mamapo
boat (big one: whale-boat), soatau
boat (small one), paopao
boat (general word), tulula
boat (used for bonito-fishing), va'aalo
body, tino
boil, ulcer, papala
boil, to, puna: the water is boiled = 'ua puna le vai
bold, daring, mālosi
bone (n.), īvi
bonito (a fish), atu
book (n.), tusi
boom, to (surf on the reef, etc.), fa'asai, aoai
boot (n.), se'evae
bore, drill, to, vili
borrow, to, aitalafu, no, nono
bosom, fatafata
bottle (n.), fagu
bough, lalā, lā
boundary, tuaoi
bouquet (of flowers), teu
bow (of a ship), taumua
bow (archery), aufana
box (n.), 'apa, pūsa
boy, lad, tama
bracelet, taulima
brains, fāvai
branch (n.), la la'au
brass, apa memea
brave (adj.), fitafita
bravo! māte!
bread, falaxm, masi (hard bread)
breadfruit, ''ulu
break, to, gau, momo, tofotofi
(this last means to break in pieces)
break in two, asunder, to, gau
break open, to, pua'i
break through, to, vaelua, gau
break up, to, gaugau
breasts, susu
breath, breathing, mānaviga
breeze, savili
bride, fa'atoanofotane
bridegroom, fa'atoa-fau, framā (hard
ly ever used)
bridge (n.), auala laupapa, alavai
bridle (n.), fa'agutu
bring, to, aumai, avatu
bring away, to, au'ese
bring back, to, fa'afoi mai
brisk, nimble, vave
broad (adj.), lau, lautele
brood, hatch, to, fofoa
brother (of a brother), uso
brother (of a sister), tuagane
brother, a younger, uii
brown, e'ena
bruise, crush, to, nutipala
bud (of leaves), to, fotu
build, to, ati, gaoi
building (n.), fale

bullet, pulu
burial, tanuga
burn, to, mu, susunui, fa'a —
bury, to, tanu, nā
bush, vao; virgin bush, vao
matua
bustle, turmoil (n.), lauaitu
but, a, ae, a e peitali
butt, to, su'a
butter, pata
butterfly, telefua
button (n.), fa'amau
buy, purchase, to, fa'atau
by, latalata, e lata ane

cable, rope, maea, mafiāfi
cake (n.), poto'i
calf (young of cow), tama'i povi
calf (of leg), ate or

call, cry out, to, leo, alaga,
valaau
call, hail (n.), leo
called, named, to be, igoa;
what is your name? = po'o
ai lo'u igoa? My name is

B = 'o o'u 'o B——
call to, to, vala'au
camp (n.), lauapi
camp, to pitch, iōlauāpi
camping-place, togalauapi
candid, frank, fa'amalosi
candlestick, tu'ugālamepa
cannon, big gun, fanafanua
cap, bonnet, pulou
capital (city), mataupu
carress, fondle, to, ta'aloto,

carpenter, tufuga
carpet, 'ie afu
carry, bear, to, amo, fata, tauave
cart, waggon, fata; or nofoa
fa'ataavae'ale

cartridge, uhu faga
carve, to, logi logi
carve faces, figures, etc., to,
atigā
case, box (n.), atola 'au
cast (metal), to, tunu
VOCABULARY

cat, pusi

catch, to, pu'e
caterpillar, anufe
cave (n.), ana

cease, to, mā va e
centipede, atu alo
chain (n.), mea umea

c change, alter, to, lī u
charcoal, mā lala
charity, mea alo fa
charm, to, ololi
cheap, reasonable, tau go fī e
cheat, to, 'ole'ole, fa'a —
cheek (n.), alaju, alajau
cheerful, fiafia
chemise, 'o/m
chest, box, atola 'au
chest-of-drawers, pusai'oso
chestnut, ifi
chew, to, mā mā, lamu
chief (n.), alii
chieftainess, lady, tama'ita'i
child, tama
child (of a chief), alo
childbirth, fā nau
children, fā nau
choose, elect, to, filifili
chap up wood, to, tā tā le fasi'e
churchyard, fanua oti
cigar, utufaga
class, rank (n.), vasega
claw, paw (n.), atigivae
clean, pure, mamā
clean, to, fufulu, fa'amamā
clear, bright, malamalama
clear (ly), evident (ly), tino; if used with a verb as an adverb, iloa; tino = see clearly; tā'utino = speak clearly, etc.
cleft, crevice, pu
clerk, writer, tusitusi
cliff, crag, a'au
clip, to, tipi'e se, vae'es e
clock, waiti
close (shut), to, iā puni, puni
close to, near, i lata ana; i tafa-tafa o —
cloth, material, 'ie
cloth-clothing, lavalava
clothe, to, 'ofu, fa'a —
clothing, 'ofu
cloud (n.1), ao
club (weapon), utog i
coal (n.), mā lala
coat (n.), 'ofu tele, peleue
cock-bird, toa
coconu t fibre, moia'a
cocon u t oil, suau'u
coconut-palm, niu
coin, medal, tupe
cold (adj.), ma'aiili, mai lū lū
collar (n.), ua
collect, assemble, to, fa'apoto-poto
collect wood (for fire), to, seuseu
colour, dye (n.), lanu
colour, dye, to, fa'alaniu
comb (n.), selu
combat (n.), fagatuaga
come, to, maiu mai, sau: afio
(chief-word)

come after, follow, to, fā nau
come down, to, ifoifo
come out, to, alu 'ese, a'e mai
come towards, approach, to, soso mai
comet, pusaloa
command, order (n.), polo a i ga
commander, alii'i ave 'au
commemoration, fa'amanatuga
commence, to, amata
commit adultery, to, muli lua
common, low, fa'atau va a
community, fa'apotopotoga
compare, to, fa'atusa
compel, to, tau'unau
compensate, to, iotogia tu
complain, to, feoa'i
compose (letter, poem, etc.) to, tusi
concealed, secret (adj.), lilo, nā nā
condemn, sentence, to, fa'asala
confirm by oath, to, tautu
conformable, according to, tusa ma
conquer, to, mau, malō
crabb, pa'a
cracked, gapēpē
cramp (n.), ma'i māliu

crash, to, pa
crawlish, pa'a
cream, suāsusu to'a
creep, crawl, to, totolo, tolo, solo
crime, offence, sala
cripple (n.), pipili
crooked, curved, pi'o
cross-road, fetaulaiga
crow, to, vivini
crowd (n.), motu tagata
crowd, to, omi, tāo, tā'a
cruel, sauā
cry, shriek (n.), leo, alaga
cry out, cry aloud, to, alaga, leo
tele
cufis, tapulima
cunning, trick (n.), 'olegiga
cup, ipu
cure, heal, to, fō, fofo, fa'amā lōlo
curl, ringlet, sope
curse, bewitch, to, augani
curtain (n.), 'ie puipui
curved, fa'amou'u

cushion, pillow (n.), ali, aluga
custom, habit (n.), māsani, itū, tū
custom-house, telō
customs-officer, telona
customs-taxes, eafoga
cut, cut off, to, tipi, tafu'e
cut down, throw down, to, toilalo
cut into, to, tafa
cut in two, to, isilua
cut hair, to, tipi le laa'ulu
cut off, to, tutu 'ese
cut up, dismember, to, momomo
cuttlefish, fe'e

daily, i lea aso ma lea aso
dam, dike (n.), āi
damp, moist, malūlū
dance (n.), siva
dance, to, sīva
danger, peril, afaina
dangerous, afaina
dark, gloomy, uliuli, pouliuli
darkness, pogisa, pouliuli
dauughter (of the father), afā-
jine
daughter (of the mother), ta-
mateine
dawn of day, tafamaiata
day, ao; aso, day as opposed
to night
day after to-morrow, i e luā
deaf, pā; mate (of animals), oti

malīu
deaf, tutuli
deal, trade, to, aga
debt, aitalafu
debtor (see under owe) is ex-
pressed: 'o iai ni a lo'u mea =
my debtor
decay, fall to pieces, to, pa'ū
decide, 'olegia
deceive, to, 'ole
December, Tesema
decrepitude, mālepalēpa
depth, deepness, loto, moāna
derision, mockery, tauemuga
descend, to, alu ifo, ifo
desert, to, sola
desire; to have no desire to, to,
be unwilling, musu
desire, to, mana'o
desirous, to be, mana'o
desolate, desert, gaogao, tu'ufua
despair (n.), fememea'i
despair, to, fa'aavaivai le loto
despise, to, 'ino
destroy, break up, to, line'i,
lepeti, fa'amalepe
destruction, fa'atalafunama
devour, eat, to, 'ai
dew, sau
diamond, taloma
diarrhea, tatala
die, cube (n.), vili
difficult, faiga'īa
dig, to, 'elī
dig out, to, 'elī 'ese
dip, immerse, to, fui, tofu
direct, manage, to, ta'ita'i
director, matai
dirt, 'ele'ele
dirty (adj.), 'ele'elea
disappear, to, māva

disgrace (n.), luma
dish, platter, tānoa
disinclined, to be, musu
dismiss, to, tu'u atu
disobedient, uluvc

distant, remote, mana'o
distinguished, mamalu
divide, to, vae
divide between, to, va
division (of time), tulu'a

do, make, to, fai
do: how do you do? pe e te
malōlo?
do wrong, to, sesē, fa'aleaga
do willingly, to, faitūtū
doctor (n.), foma'i
dog (n.), māile, uli
dollar, talā
door, faitoa

doubt, to, masalosalove

dove, Indian turtle-, manu tagi
down, downwards, ifo
draw, delineate, to, tusī
draw, pull, to toso
draw forth, to fa'a'iloga
draw lots, to, vili, fa'a—
ENGLISH-SAMOAN

draw off, to, fa'aitiiti
draw out, pull out, to, eu'ese, toso'ese
draw up (letter, document, etc.), to, tusi
draw up, lift, to, sisi a'e, toso a'e
dream (n.), miti
dream, to, miti
dress, clothe, to, fa'a'ofu
dried up, gasa
drink, to, inu
drive away, to, tuli 'ese
drive out, expel, to, tuli 'ese, tuli i fafo
drop, bead (of perspiration), 'alu 'alu
drop, to, fa'apa'ā, fa'atito
drown, to, malemo
drum (n.), logo
drunk, intoxicated, 'onā
dry (adj.), matutu, mago
dry, to, magomago, soloi
dry up, to, fa'a'soloi'i, magomago
duck (n.), pato
dull, blunt, malatupa
during, manū
dust, powder (n.), efuefu
dutiful, obedient, vaogofie
dysentery, sanatoto
ecl, tuna
egg (n.), fuāmoa
eggs, to lay, tauv'u'ufa
elder (of two), ulumatua
elephantiasis, fe'e'fe'e
empire, malō
empty, to, sa'ai, sasa'a
encircle, to, siosio
end (n.), iuga, iu, gataaga
end, to, iu, fa'a —, fa'a'uma
endeavour, take pains, to, tāumafai
endure, to, onosa'i, tigā
enemy, foe, fili, 'o le ita; my enemy, 'o le ita ia le a'u
engineer, ta'avili afa
enmity, hostility, feitaga'i
enquire about, to, su'esue, fesilisili
enter (a house, etc.), to, ulufale
entire(ly), quite, 'uma, 'atua
entrust, confide, to, fa'atuatua
envious, fa'a'ā'ū
envoy, sāvali
envy (n.), mata'ā
epidemic, fa'ama'i
establish, to, fa'avae
esteemed, mamalu
even, level, papa
evening, afa'ā
evidence, testimony, molimau
evil, bad (adj.), ita, leaga
example (n.), fa'aa'o'aa'o
Excellency, susuga
excellent, sili sili
except, aua le se aunoa
excite, to, fa'aonoono
excretion, feamuga
excuse, to, fa'amagalo
exert oneself, to, finafinau, tāumafai
exile, to, tāfeaga
exist, to, tumau
existence, ola, olaga
expect, to, fa'atali
explain, to, fa'amatala
explore, reconnoitre, to, asiasi
extend, to, fa'afolā
VOCABULARY

extinguish (a light), to, feula
fa'apē, fa'amate
eye (n.), mata
eyebrows, fulfulumata
eyelid, laumata

F

face (n.), mata; fofoga (chief-word)
faith, belief, fa'atualua, talitonu
faithfulness, moni
fall, to, pa'ū
fall asleep, to, moe
fall out, wrangle, to, fefinoa'i
fall prostrate, to, pa'ū ifo
family, āiga
fan (n.), ili
far, remote, mamoo, va tele
farewell, tā bid (see bid farewell)
fashion, custom, iū
fast, to, anapogi
fat, grease (n.), ga'o
fat, greasy (adj.), lafulemu
father, tamā
fatty (adj.), lolo
fear, fright (n.), fese
feast (n.), tausamiga
feather, fulu
February, Fepuali
feed, line, to, faga
feel, to, tago
feel cold, to, to'a
fellow (n.), tamāloa
fence, hedge, 'ai, 'aupā
fetter, to, fa'amau
fever, mai, vevela
field, losāto
field-path, alatua
fig, mati
fight, contest (n.), misa, finau
fight, to, fefinoa'i
file, to, 'ili
fill, to, tumu, fa'a —
fill a vessel, jug, etc., to, utu
finally, muliai
find, to, mau
finger (n.), tamā'īlima
finger-nail, atigi, mati'ū

finish, to, fa'a'uma, fa'aiu
fire (n.), afi
fireplace, 'ōgāumu
firewood, fa'i'e
first, the, uluai, muamua
first-born, ulumatua
fish (n.), t'a
fish, to, fagota
fisherman, taulai
fish-hook, māiou
fist, 'u'u, fusu
fix, to, fa'atumau
flag (n.), fu'a
flame (n.), mūmū o le afi
flank (n.), gahu
flat, level, papa
flatten, iron, to, āuli
flea, utufiti
flee, run away, to, sosola
flesh, muscle, 'anogase
flight, escape (n.), sosola
flock, herd (n.), lafu
flood, inundation, lolo, fōgāvai
flood-tide, tai; it is flood-tide, ua fana'e le tai
flow, to, tafe
flower (n.), fuga, scie
fluid, liquid (adj.), suā
fly (n.), lago, garova (introduced word)
fly, to, lele, sosola (flee from)
foliage, leaves, lāu
follow, to, 'ana'ana, usiusita'i;
muli, mulimuli (the two first words also mean to obey)
follow, to (speaking of time), amuli
folly, valea
food, mea e'ai, 'aiga
fool, jester, valea
foot (n.), vaе
footstool, tawuе
for, instead of, e sui
for, then (conj.), auā
forbid, to, vavaо
forbidden, sā, tapu
force, power (n.), mana
forehead, mu'd'u
foreign, strange, papalagi
forest, vao; virgin forest, vao mataua
forget, to, galo
forgive, to, fa'amogalo
fork (n.), tu'i
form, shape (n.), fa'atusa, tino
fowl, chicken, moa
fragment, mea lepetia
fragrant, manogi
fraud, deceit, mailei
free, sa'o, sa'oloto
freeze, to, to'a
fresh, new, fou
Friday, Asofatalie
friend, u'u
friend ! (in addressing a person), sole e !
friendly, kind, mata alofa
frighten, to, atutawale
frightened, to be, le'i
frost, sau to'a
fruit (n.), fua, fuala'au
fruitful, productive, utuola
fulfil, to, taunu'u
full, tumu
full moon, masina 'atoa
future (adj.), atali

G
gain, profit (n.), mua
gall, bile, au
gargle, to, pūpū
garment (of a chief), 'ofualii
gate, door, faitoa
gentleman, ali'i
genuine, moni, moi
get up, rise, to, tula'i, tū a'la
giant (n.), tagata mauluga
gift, present, mea alofa
gifted, endowed, atama'i
girl, teine; funa e i, siula ! (the
two latter words are used
when calling to one)
give, to, avatu, foai, mai
give back, return, to, toe tu'u mai
glad of, to be, fiafia
glance at, to, tepa
glass, ipu malamalama, tioata
glass, tumbler, ipu inu, ipu
glide, to, se'e
glitter, shine, to, pupula
glow, make red-hot, to, pusa
gnash one's teeth, to, lilivau
gnat, midge, namu
go, to, alu, savali
go away, to, alu'ese
go down, to, goto
go in, enter, to, ulu atu, ulufale
go out, to, tafao, ulufafo
go out, to (of a light), mate
go through, across, to, u atu
go towards, approach, to, soso atu
going out (n.), iu, maliuga
goat, 'oti (introduced word)
God, Atua
gold, auro (introduced word)
good, lelei
good-bye !, farewell !, soifua, tofā
gospel, tala lelei
gossip (n.), ta'utu, talatalanoa
gracious, merciful, alofa
gradual(ly), to'ataitiiti ma to-
'ataitiiti
grandson, atalii a le atalii
glass, mutia
grate, tomb, tu'ugamau
green, lanulau'ava
greet, salute, to, alofa, fedofa'i ;
sogi (alofa used to be the old
Samoan greeting when "rub-
bing noses"). See salutation
grey, ulusina
grief, sorrow, tiga
grieve, vex, to, fa'atiga
grind, to, 'olo
gristle, cartilage, ponāivi
groan, to, o'i, uiō
grope about, to, tautago
grow tall, to, 'ese
grudge, to bear a, muimui
grumble, growl, to, muimui
guard, to, fa'ateete
guess, conjecture, to, masalo
guest, malō
VOCABULARY

guest-house, *fale talimalo*
guide, leader, *'o le ta'ita'i*,
  *ta'imua*
guide, lead, to, *ta'ita'i*, *fa'a'o'o*
guilt, sin, *agasala, sala*
guilty, to be, *sala*
gulp, swallow, to, *folo*
gun (small arm), *fana*
gush out, flow out, to, *puna*

**H**
hail (precipitation) (n.), *uato'a*
hair, *lau'ulu, fulufulu*
half (n.), *vaeluagailemu*
half (adj.), *afa*
hall, *fa'apa'olaga*
ham, *alaga i vae*
hammer (n.), *samala*
hand (n.), *lima, 'ao; aao* (chief-word)
hand (right), *taumatau*
hand (left), *tauagavale*
handicraft, trade, *faiva*
handle (of a tool, etc.), *'āu*
handle, to, *oso atu*
hang, to, *tautau*
hang up, to, *fa'atautau*
happen, to, *o'o*
happiness, *manuia*
happy, *manuia*
harbour, port (n.), *'ava, taulaga*
hard (in substance), *ma'a*
harvest, crop (n.), *sele o le saito*
harvest, to, *sele*
hasten, to, *fa'ava'ave, fa'ataalise*
hat, *pulou papalagi*
hate, to, *'ino'inono*
hatred, *'ino, fa'ataga'i*
head (n.), *ulu*
heap, pile (n.), *faupu'ega*
hear, to, *fa'a'ologo, lagoua; fa'afo'ofaga* (chief-word)
heat, hot weather, *vevela*
heaven, *lagi*
heavy, *mamafā*
heal (n.), *mulivae*
heighten, to, *fa'amaualuga*
heir, *suli*

hell, *fatā; seoli* (introduced word)
helm (of a ship), *foeuli*
help, to, *lavea'i, fesoaosaoi*
hemorrhoids, *faupu'e*
hen, *mua, matua*
here 'i'inei
here and there, *i lea mea ma lea mea*
hesitate, linger, to, *fa'atuai*
hide, conceal, to, *fa'alilo, nanā, lafi*
high, lofty, *muaualuga*
high (when referring to God, or a chief), *silisili*
highroad, *ala*
hill, mound, *a'ega, maupu epe*
hinder, to, *vavao*
hindrance, *fa'alavelave*
hip, haunch, *sulapalapa*
hit, struck, to be, *lavea*
hoarse, to be, husky, *tau'olo*
hold aloof, to, *taumamao*
hold fast, to, *taofi*
hold on, to, *taofi*
hole (n.), *lua, utu*
hollow (adj.), *pu, fa'aōō*
home, *nu'u; my home, 'o l'ou
  nu'u; is Mr. A. at home?
p'o o ia le ali A.?
honey, *meli*
honour (n.), *mamalu*
honour, to, *ava*
honoured, respected, *agafa 'alamaalangi* i, *mamalu*
hoof (n.), *atigivae*
hook (n.), *fa'amau*
hope, expect, to, *fa'amoemoemoe*
horizon, *tafatafa i lagi*
horn, *nifo*
horse, *solofanua*
hospitable, *talimalō*
hot, *vevela*
hour of the day, *itu'ula, or itu aso*
hour of the night, *itu'upō; four
  a.m., itu'upō e fa; nine p.m.,
  itu'upō e iva*
house (n.), *fale*
house (of a chief), *maota*
house (of a king), maota o le tupu
house (for strangers), fale papa-lagi
house (built of wood), fale laupapa
house (Samoan native), fale Samoa
howl, to, uiō, uō
human being, tagata
humble, lower, to, fa'amaulolo
hump-backed, 'o le tua pi'o
hungry (adj.), fia'ai
hungry, to be, fa'alaina
hunt, chase, to, tuli manu
hunting, tuligamanu
hurricane, afā
hurry, to, fa'awave, fa'ataalise
hurt oneself, to, gaugau
husband (n.), tane
hut, apitaga

I
I, 'ou, 'o'au, iā
idle, lazy, pai'e
ill-bred, fouwale, uluwale
imbecile (adj.), valea
imitate, to, fa'apei
imitation (n.), fa'apei, fo'ao'ao'o
immediately, loa
immodest, lēmatamuli
impose, to, fa'aee
in, i, i totonu
include, to, iloa
indicate, to, tā'u atu, moli
infirmity, ma'i
inflammation of the eyes, ogo, ogotea
inherit, to, suli
ink (n.), vaitusi
innocent (adv.), i uta
innocent, sa'o
innumerable, lēmafaiataulia
in order that, ina sei'a
inquiry, su'e ga
inside, within, i totonu
instruct, to, a'oa'o
instruction, mataupu
insult (n.), upuleaga
insult, to, fa'aleaga, fa'amasiasi, 'ote
intend, mean, to, manatu, ma-salo
intention, manatu
interlace, twist, to, folo'atoa
interpreter, fa'amatala upu
interval, space, va
intestines, ga'au, tōtōga
invite, to, talā'i
iron, uamea
island, nu'u motu

J
jail, fale pu'ipu'i
January, Fanuali
jealousy, fuā
jew, juta
join (anyone), to, pīi
joiner, mataisau
joint (of limb), ponāivi
journey (n.), malagay, savali
joy, pleasure, fiafia, olioli
joyous, glad, fa'alotote
judge (n.), fa'amasino
July, Julai
June, Juni
just, righteous, amionu, tonu
just as, even as, tusa, lava
justice, amitono
justify, vindicate, to, ta'uamionu

K
kanaka (native of one or other of the South Sea groups of islands), tagata Samoa, tagata Fiti, etc.
kava (native drink), 'ava
kava-bowl, tānoa
keep, retain, to, tausi
keep for something, put by, to, ave ma
kernel, seed (also internal organs of body), fatu
key, ki (introduced word)
kidney, fetuga'o
112 VOCABULARY

kill, to, fast, fasioti
kind (adj.), agalelei
kindle, to, fa'amu, tutu
king, tupu; regent, suitupu
kingdom, malo
kiss, to, sogi
kitchen, tunoa, paito, umu
kitchen-range, 'ogāumu
knead, to, palu
knee, tulivae
knife (n.), naHfi
knock at, to, tuHtuH
knot (n.), ponā
know, be acquainted with, to, iloa
know, be aware of, to, iloa
knowledge, iloa lelei

L
laborious, loaga
ladder, aila fa'apefea
ladder-rope, apefāi
lamb, tama'i māmoe
lame (adj.), supa, vaepi'o
lament, weep for, to, tauaitagi
lamp, molt
land (n.), nu'u; 'ele'ele (communal land); fanua (piece of land)
lane, alāhua
language, tautala, gagana
lantern, lāmepa
late, tuaī
late in the day, 'ua po
laugh, to, 'ata, tapisa
laugh at, to, tapisa, fa'atauemū
laughter, 'ataga
law, tulafono
lay down, put down, to, fa'atawo
lay eggs, to, tauu'ufuā
lay waste, to, fa'atafuna
lazy, fa'atitipa
lead, conduct, to, pule, ta'ita 'i
lead astray, to, fa'asese
leaf, lā, lāu
league (n.), feagaiga
leap up, to, oso
learn, to, a'o mai
leather, pa'u
leave, desert, to, tu'u, fa'ate'a
leave that! let that alone!, soia!
leave, abandon, to, te'a
leech, tavau
left, on the, to the, tauagavale
leg, vae
legislative assembly, fono
legitimate, moni, moi
lemon, tipolo
lend, to, nono, no
length, umi (measurement)
lengthen, to, fa'afafuloa
least, 'aua
let go, to, te'a, te'a 'ese
letter, tusi
letter of the alphabet, mata'itisi
liberate, free, to, fa'asa'oloto
lick, lap, to, 'eto'elo
lie, be situated, to, taoto, ta'atia
lie, tell a lie, to, pepelo
lie down, recline, to, taoto
life, ola
lifeless, inanimate, gasa
lifetime, olaga
lift, to, sii, 'ope 'ope
lift up, to, fa'aa'e
light (to carry), māmā
light, to, fa'amu
light a fire, to, tafu le afi
light (n.), malamalama
lightning, uila
like, equal (adj.), tusa ma
like, be fond of, to, manao
lime, chalk (n.), namu, panisina
limp, to, setusetu
line (rope), gafa
linen-goods, 'ie 'lino
lip, laugutu
little, small, ititi laitiiti
little, few, toaititi
live, reside, to, nofo, mau
live, exist, to, ola
liver (internal organ), ate
living, alive, soifua
lizard, mo'o, pili
load, burden (n.), amo, avega
loam, soil, om'ea
lock (of hair), sope
lock up, to, puni
lonely, goagoa
long (adj.), umi
long (time), tulu'i
long ago, leva, 'ua leva
long for, to, mana'o
look after, gaze after, to, tulimata'i
look at, to, matamata
look closely at, to, pulatoa
look for, to, saili
looking-glass, tioata
lose, to, le iloa
lot, destiny (n.), vili
louse, 'utu
love (n.), alofa
love, to, alofa
lovely, charming, su'amalie
lower, pull down, to, tu'tutu'u ifo
lull to sleep, to, fa'amoe gase
lunatic, moonstruck (adj.), ma'i maliu
lungs, mâmâ
lustre, gloss (n.), pupula

M

machinist, ta'avili afi
mad, insane, fasa, fa'avale-mâlosi
maggot, anufe
magician, taualaitu
magnificent, splendid, matagofie
magnify, enlarge, to, fa'atoatele
maiden, teine, tâupou
maid-servant, 'au'auna fâfine
maize, Indian corn, sana
make, to, fai
make a noise, to, pisaô
make contemptible, to, fa'alèaoga
make drunk, to, fa'ainua
make fast, tie up, to, nonoa
make known, to, fa'asitasila
make use of, to, fa'aaogâ
male (of animals), poa

man, tagata, tamâloa
man (old), toeaiva
manner, mode, uiga
man-servant, 'au'auna, tavini
manure, dung, otaota
March, Mati
mark, to, vali
market (n.), maalae
marriage, fa'aipoipoga
marry, to, fa'aipoipo
marsh, swamp, savaliga
mast, fanâ
mat, fala, toga
match (lucifer), afitusi
matter, pus, alou
May, Me
meal, repast, 'aiga; to prepare a meal, fa'i se umu
meal (of a chief), taumafataga
meal (of a king), tautea
meal (ground cereal), falaomata
mean, to, is rendered by 'o lona uiga, meaning, "I do not know what it means"; 'ou te le iloa lona uiga
measure (n.), fua
measure, to, fua
meat, beef, pulumata'u (derived from the English "bull and a cow")
meat (any kind but beef), aano, 'ano
mechanic, tufuga
medicine, vaila'au
meeting (n.), fa'apotopotoga
meet with, to, fetaiai, fa'a —
melon, meleni; water-melon, esi
member (part of the body), tino sino
mend, repair, to, fa'amasae, fono
merchant, trader, tagata fa'atau
message, fe'au
messenger, sävali, manu, tili
midday, noon, aoauli
middle (n.), tulu'a
midnight, 'o le tulu'a o le ao ma po
mile, maila
milk (n.), suâsusu
mill, 'olo, fale 'olo
millstone, ma'a 'olo
mind, soul, loto
minister of state, ali'i pule
mire, mud, palapala
misery, puapuaga
missionary, faife'au
mist, fog, ausa, pule, puao
mistake, fault, mea e ponā
mistaken, to be, err, fā (think);

mix, blend, to, pahu
mob, rabble, vao tagata
mock, deride, to, tauemū
modest, matamuli
molest, to, fa'aioesa
moment, 'emo o le mata,
mataeemo
Monday, Asogafua
money, tupe
month, māsina
moon (n.), māsina
moon, new, māsina fou
morning, taeao
morning-star, fetūao
mosquito, namu
mosquito-net, tāinamu
mother, tinā
mountain: mountain range,
mauga
mouse, 'imōa
mouth, gulu; fofoga (chief-word)
move, stir, to, gaoioi
moved, stirred, to be, ātu le
loto
mow, to, sele le sāito
mud, dirt, 'inoa
multitude (of people), motu
tagata
murder (n.), fāsiga
murder, to, fāsioi
murderer, fāsioi
muscle, anogase
musical instrument, laupese
must: see obliged, and in
Syntax on the Future Tense
mystery, tupua

N

nail (n.), fao
naked, lēlava lava, telefua, le
uūfia
name (n.), igoa
name, mention, to, igoa
nape of the neck, ua
narrative, story, tala, talanoaga
narrow, slim, va apiapi
nation, ni'u
native (of Samoa) (n.), tagata
Samoa
near, close, latalata
nearly, almost, tāi
necessitate, to, uogā
neck, ua
neck-chain, 'ula
need, necessity, puapuaga
needle, au, nila
negligent, pai'e, fa'atīpā
neighbour, 'o le — tuaoi
my neighbour, 'o le ma te
tuaoi
thy neighbour, 'o le lua le
tuaoi
his neighbour, 'o le la te tuaoi
our neighbour, 'o le mātou te
tuaoi
your neighbour, 'o le 'outou
te tuaoi
their neighbour, 'o le lātou te
tuaoi
neighbourhood, laʻeleʻele
nest, ofaga
net (n.), upega
network (adj.), fa'amaataupega
nevertheless, a e uī lava i lea
new, fou
next, atali
night, po
nightshirt, 'ofu moe
night-watch (n.), alalafaga
nine, īva
nobody, e leai se tasi
nod, make a sign, to, genogeno
noise (n.), pisāo
noose, snare, fa'amausa'alave
north, matu
nose, isu, pogaisu
notch, carve, to, togitogi
note, mark, to, ioa
notify, announce, to, ta'u atu
not yet, le'i
nourish, to, tausi, faga
nourishment, food, mea e a'i
November, Novema
now, at present, nei
number (n.), a'ofai, faitau
number, count, to, fautau
nun, taupou sā
nurse (n.), 'o le tausi tama
nurse, attend to, to, tausi

O

oath, tautoga
oath, to confirm by, tauto
obedient, vaogofē
obey, to, see follow.
oblige, to, see (must), tatau; (see Syntax on Future Tense)
observe, watch, to, leoleo, lamalama
obstinate, stubborn, fouwale
ocean, moana, sausau
October, Oketopa
off, away, 'ese
offence, ū, tausuai
offering (n.), taulaga
official (n.), tofi o le malō
often, frequently, so'o
oil (n.), suau'u, u'u
ointment, suau'u manogi
old, matua, tuai, leva
onion, aniani
open, to (book, hand, etc.), fa'amafola
open, to (door, etc.), tatala, fa'aavanoa atu
open (adj.), avanoa
opposite, e fea'ai mai
oppression, persecution, sauāga
orange, moli'aina
order, command, to, pule, aoai;
to order something not to be
done, to countermand, vavae
origin, to, tupu, ala
ornament, finery, teu, teuga
orphan (n.), mātuaoiti
orphan (adj.), mātuaoiti
other, 'o le tasi
out, 'ese
out of doors, i fafo
outside, i tua
outside, on the, ī fafo
overcoat, 'ofu tele
overcome, to, manumalo
overthrow, to, fa'actito, fuli
owe, to; this is expressed by
'o iai 'o lo'u seleni e sefulu,
which literally means: there
are to him my shillings ten =
he owes me ten shillings
owl, lulu
ox, pulumatau ("bull and a
cow")

P

packthread, manoa
pain (n.), tigā; to feel bodily
pain, tigā; to feel mental
pain, ātu
paint, to, vali
palace (chief's house), maota
palm of the hand, alofilima
pants, drawers, 'ofu vae
paper (n.), laupepa, pepa
pardon, to, fa'amanagalo, alofa
parents (plural), mātua
part (n.), tofi, ifaaga
pass away, vanish, to, māvae
pass by, to, alu one, maliu one
pass the night, to, api
patch, to, fa'amasa'e
Pater, patele
path, ala
path (over mountains), ala sopo
patience, to have, fa'apalepale
patient (adj.), 'onosa'i
patron, utufaga
pay, to, toloti, lāu
payment, toloti
peace, filemu, so'oata
pearl, penina
pen (n.), peni
pencil, penetala
peninsular, mulinu'u (there is one so named close to Apia).
people (n.), 'o tagata, 'o 'au, mu'u
perceive, to, iloa
performer, tufoa poto
perfume, (n.), sausau
perhaps, atonu
permit, to, tu'u
persevere, to, tumau
persist, to, tumau, tauanau
philosopher, sage, poto
photograph, photography, pu'eata
physician, foma'i
pick, gather (fruit), to, toli
pick a quarrel, to, fia misa
pick up, to, fu'e, sii, ava'e
picture, image, fa'ataoga
piece, morsel, tofi, fasi
pig, pua'a
pigeon, lupe
pillage, plunder, to, vete
pillar, poutū
pillow (n.), aluga
pin (n.), pine
pincers, 'ofoi
pinch, to, 'ini
pine-apple, fala
pipe (n.), utufaga, paipa
pious, agamalū
pit, ditch, utu, lua
place, put, to, fa'atū, tu'uai
place (n.), mea
plague, vex, to, taufa'alili
plain (n.), fanua taugatasi
plant, to, to
plate, dish, ipu'ai
play to, ta'aloi
pleasant, malie, flafla
please: if you please, fa'a-molemole; this pleases me, e lelei le mea lea i lo'u manatu; this displeases me, e leaga le mea lea i lo'u manatu
plough (n.), suotosina
pocket (n.), taga
pocket-handkerchief, solosolo
poem, upu, fa'ataoto
poet, faatu pease
point out, to, fa'ailoaga
poison (n.), 'ona
poison, to, fa'a'onā
poisoned (adj.), 'ona
poisonous, 'ona
police constable, leoleo
polish shoes, to, fa'apupula se'evae
polite, courteous, mgā'o
pond, vailepa
pool (n.), palapala
possess, to, tofi
post (for fence, etc.), pou
pot, pan, pani
pound (n.), pauna
pour out, to, sasa'a, liligi
power, pule, mana, mālosi
praise (n.), viiga
praise, to, vii
pray, to, tatālo
prayer, talosaga
preach, to, talā'i, folofola
preacher, faife' au
precious stone, tu'ugama'a
precipice, fafā, moana
pregnant, to
prepare (food, etc.), to, sauni
prepared, sauni; usu (referring to kava)
prepare for, to, sauni
preserve, keep, to, tausi
press, squeeze, to, lomi
presume, surmise, to, masalo
pretty, manaia, matalelei
prevent, to, li'u'ese, fālūi (to order a thing not to be done, fa'alelavelave)
previously, anamua, muai
price, cost (n.), tau
prick, to, tu'i
pride (n.), fa'amauataluga
priest, faitauluaga
print, to, lomi
prison, fale pu'ipui'i
prisoner, tagataotaua
property, possession, tofi, 'oloa tūau ma . . .
ENGLISH-SAMOAN

protect, defend, to, fa'amanamalu
protection, shelter, talita
prove, test, to, su'esu'e
provisions, stores, oso
provoking, ila
prudent, sensible, poto, atama'i, mafaufau
public (adj.), fa'aaliali
publication, silasilamai'i
publish by crier, to, uiō
pull off (clothes, etc.), to, to'e, tatala'e
pull on (clothes, etc.), to, 'ofu
pulpit, tuliga
punish, to, fa'asala
punishment, sala
purse, taga o le tupe
pursue, to, tuliloa, fa'asau
pull (off, clothes, etc.), to, to'ese, tatal'ese
pull out (teeth, etc.), to, toso
pull out (clothes, etc.), to, 'ofti
punish, to, fa'asala
punishment, sala
pull off (clothes, etc.), to, to'e
pull on (clothes, etc.), to, to'ese

R
race (of people), ituāiga, uiga
racle, trestle (n.), tulaga
raging, mad, fa'avalemālosi
rail, bar (n.), fa'alaava
railway, ala uamea
rain (n.), ua, timu
rain, to: it rains, 'ua toto le ua; it does not rain, e le'ai se ua
raise, to, sīi
rampart, mound, 'ainpā
rash (on skin), pou
rat (n.), isumu
ravine, deep valley, vanu
reach to, extend to, o'o
read, to, faiatau
ready, 'uma, maea
real, actual, moni
rear (guard) (n.), muli'au
reasonable, atama'i
rebellion, fouale
receive, accept, to, tali, talia
reconciliation, account, tusi o le aitalafu
recommend, to, ta'uleleia
reconcile, to, fa'aleleia
red, mumu
reed, cane, u
reef (n.), a'au
reflect upon, to, manatu, manatunatu
refuge, suluafaiga
refuse, decline, to, musu
regent (vice-chief), suitupu
region, country, nu'u, lau'ele'ele
regret, to, salamo
regulate, arrange, to, tcu
religion, lotu
remain, stay, to, tu'u, nofo
remainder, rest, to
remedy, medicine, togafiti
remembrance, manatuga, fa'a —
remind, to, manatu, fa'amanatu
remove (household), to, tu'ulafo'ai
removed, 'uma, fa'a —
repentance, salamo
reply, to, tali
representative, sui
requisite, to, tauri, avatu se tauri
resemble, equal, to, tusa, foliga
resemblance, foliga
reside, to, feimaliu'i
residence, dwelling, fale
respect, to, ava, fa'amataliali'i
rest, repose (n.), filēmū, mapusaga
rest, to, mapu, maiolō
restless, uneasy, atua'tuvalu
return, give back, to, toe tu'u mai
return, come back, to, foi mai
reward, payment, totogi, taui
rice, laisa
rich, wealthy, mau’oa
riches, wealth, 'oloa, 'oa
riddle, mystery (n.), tupua
ride, to, tī'eti'e i le solofanua
ridicule (n.), faiaga
right, exact, sa'o, tonu
right, just, tonu
right, on the right hand, itu
ring a bell, to, tagitagi, fa'a
ring (finger), mama
ring-worm, lafa
ripe, mature, otā
rise (of the sun), to, oso
rise, to, tula'i, tū ala
rise early, to, usu
river, stream, vaiatafe
rivulet, brook, alia
road, path, ala, auala
roar, bellow, to, (animals), tagi
roast, to, falai
rob, deprive, to, fa'o, vete
roaster, 'o le fa'o mea
rock, crag, papa
roll up, to, fōlā
roof, uft, falealuga
room (in a house), afeafe, potu
room, space, mea
root (n.), aa, pogai
rot, putrefy, to, pala
rotten, putrid, pa'i'e
row (a boat, etc.), to, ālo, taulalo, taupale
rub, to, 'olo, mili
ruder, foe
ruddy, reddish-brown, efuefu
rude, ill-bred, ulwale
ruin, deprivation, malaia
ruin, demolish, to, fa'atofuna
rule, govern, to, pule, ali'itai
run, to, momoe
run away, desert, to, sola
run out (of fluids), to, masa'a
run to and fro, to, feoa'i
rush, reed, vao uutu
see, to, iloa, matamata, vaai
see clearly, to, ti'o, pulatoa
seed, grain, sāiño
seek, to, saili
seethe, boil, to, puna
seize, to, pu'epu'e
sell, to, fa'atalu atu
send, to, au, auina, fe'au
send for, to, ami, feau
separate, to, fa'ate'a ese, alei fa'amasese
September, Setema
sermon, talagi'a, lāuga
servant, tavini
serve, attend, to, au'auna, tavini
serviette, sologutu
set, place, to, ti'eti'e, tu'u
set up, to, fa'atu
settle down, establish oneself, to, nofo
sew, to, su'i
sex, tupulaga, itūāiga, gafa
shade, shadow (n.), ata, paolo
shade, to, fa'amalu
shaft, 'au
shake, jolt, to, lūlū
shake, toss, to, luelue
shame, disgrace (n.), luma
shame!, what a, isa!
shameless, ma'āitu
share, divide, to, tofīoti, tufa
shark, malie
sharp, keen, ma'ai
shave, to, sele mamā
shear, mow, to, sele
sheath, scabbard, fa'amoea
shed, barn, fale saito
sheep, māmoe
sheet, bed-, 'ie moe
sheet-metal, apa memeа
shell, (fish's), faisua, pule
shepherd (n.), leoleo
shield (n.), talita, talipupuni
shilling, seleni
shine, to, fa'amalamalama
ship (n.), va'a
ship's lantern, taetuli
shirt, 'ofu tino
shoe, se'evae
shoot, fire, to, fana
shoot off, to, fanafana
shop (n.), fale 'oloа, fale'oa
short, brief, pu'upu'u
shorten, to, fa'apu'upu'u
shoulder (n.), ua, tau'au
shovel (n.), suo
show, to, fa'aali, fa'ailoа, fa'asino
shower (a sudden downpour), uaga
shriek, to, utō
shut, to, manatu, pupuni
sick, ill, to be, gasegase (chief-word)
sick, ill (adj.), ma'i
sickness, ma'i
side (n.), itu, asoaso
silence, malu
silent, to be, fa'alologo
silly, simple, vale, valea
silver (n.), ario
similar to, like, tusa
sin (n.), agasala
since, talu
sincere, moni
sinew, tendon, ua
sing, to, pese
singing, song, pese
sink, to, goto
sister (of a brother), tuafafine
sister (of a sister), uso
sit, to, nofo, ti'eti'e
skim, to, fānā
skin, hide (n.), pa'u
skin, outer, iliola
slander, to, fa'aupuleaga, ta'u
'sifua
slate (writing), ma' atusi
slate-pencil, pene ma'a
slaughter, to, fāsi
slave, pologa
slay, to, fāsi
sleep, to, moe
sleep, to lull to, see luli
sleepy, fiamoe
slew about, waver, to, ta'avili
slope, ifo'ai
smell, scent (n.), manogi
smell, to, sogisogi
smell of, to, pipilo
smell strongly, to, elo
smell (ore), to, tunu
smoke, vapour, asu
smooth, iron, to, āuli
smooth (adj.), lamolemale
snake, gata
sneeze, to, māfatua
snore, to, tāgulu
soft, agamalū, malū, vaivai
soil, earth, ome'a
soldier, fitafita, tagata tau
soldiery, 'aw
sole (of the foot), alofiava
some, a few, nai
something, sina
song, pese
soon, nanei
soon after, nanei
sooner, anamua
sorrow, care (n.), sopola
sound, healthy, mālōlō
sound (n.), tagitagi, pāo
sound the trumpet, to, ili pu
soup, supo, piasua
sour, 'o'ona
south, itu i toga, saute
space, room (n.), mea
spare, save, to, alofa
speak, talk, to, upu, fai atu, fetalai
speak to anyone, to, fai mai, fai atu, fetalai, tala; tulie (chief-word)
speak a language, to, tautala; do you speak English? pe e te iloa tautala fa'apeletania?
spear (n.), tao
spectre, apparition, aitu
speech, oration, upu, tala, fetalaiaga
spider, apoagaleveleve
spill, to, fa'amalātī
spin, to, Milo
spirit, ghost, agaga, atama'i
spirituous liquor, 'ava papalagi
spit, to, feanu
spiteful, ulavale
spit out, to, feanu
spittle, feanuga
splendour, pomp, malagofie
spoil, to, leaga
spoiled, stained, pala
sponge (n.), omomi
spoon, punu
spot, stain (n.), ila
spotted, stained, ilaila
sprig, shoot, fatafata
spring, to, oso, fiti
spring of water, punavai
spy (n.), tagata agaga
squint, to, malasesepa
squirt, to, sausau
stable (n.), laoā
staff (n.), to'oto'o
stag, aila
stagger, to, hulu
staircase, ala faapefai
stammer, to, nanu
stand, to, tū
stand about, to, fa'ataamilo
stand by, to, fesoasoani
star (n.), fetū
starch-meal, masoā
starling, fuia
starvation, 'oge
statue, tupua
stay, sojourn, to, fa'atuaiai
stay, pay a visit, to, api
steal, pilfer, to, gāoi
steam (n.), asu
steam-boat, setima (steamer
steep, to, lapi
stick (n.), to'oto'o
still, silent, fuēmū
stimulate, to, fa'aososo
sting, to, ti'i
stir, mix, to, palu
stir up, incite, fa'anunununu
stocking, totini
stomach (n.), mānava, pulu, puta: toga'ai (of animals)
(stomach-ache, 'o le tigā o le mānava
stone (n.), ma'a: fatu (fruit-stone)
stony, ma'a'a
stoop, to, punou
stop, to, ma'ae
store, shop (n.), fale'oa, fale 'oloa
storm (n.), afā, matagi, agi
straight, direct, sa'o
strait(s) (geographical), vasa
strange, odd, 'ese
strange, foreign, papalagi
stranger, alien, tagata papalagi
strangle, to, titina
strength, force, malosi
strengthen, to, fa'amalosi
stretch out, to, fa'aloaloa
strike, to, tā
strike off, to, tipi 'ese
stroke, to, Straits (geographical), vasa
strange, foreign, papalagi
stranger, alien, tagata papalagi
straight, direct, sa'a
storm (n.), 'o le fulu ato muli
tailor, tufuga fa'i'ofu, 'o le su'i
take, to, ave, avane
take down, to, ave ifo
take up, to, pu'epu'e
talk idly, to, ta'usua
tame, to, toilalo
tanner of skins, fa'i pa'u manu
taste, test, to, tofo
taste (n.), manamu, manogi
taste acid, to, fe'a
tax (n.), taulaga
teach, to, a'o, a'ou'ou atu
teacher, fa'a'oga
tear (drop), loimata
tear, rend, to, sae
tear out, to, loso 'ese
tease, chaff, to, toufa 'alili
teeth (set of), 'o nifo
tell, to, see say
tell, relate, tala, ta'u
tenacious, tough, fefeu, feu
tepid, lukewarm, māfanafana
terror, fright, mataliita, fa'a-'ite'ite
testify, to, moli
thank, to, fa'a'feta'i
that, lenā, lea
the more — the —, atali — ai —
then (adv.), 'ona — ai lea
there, i ai, ta'ila, 'iō, lela
therefore, 'o le mea
therein, i tolonu
there is: see Grammar under
Irregular Verbs
these, 'a
thick, lapoa, lapopoa
thief, gafōi; literally meaning,
to keep something a secret.
Samoans hold all possessions
in common, and therefore
actual theft is (or rather was,
until the advent of the white
man) unknown
thigh, loin, auaga; shank, oga-vae
thin, lean, lafuā, pa'e'e
thing, mea
think, to, manatu; fā (which has a like meaning in the native mind), to be mistaken
thirsty, to be, tinu
this, lenei
thistle, la'aumalatala
thorn, la'autu 'itu'i
thought, idea, manatu
thousand, afe
thread (n.), filo
threaten, to, fa'asai
threshold, larynx, fa'ai
thrust, step, to, soli
thought, idea, manatu
thousand, afe
thread (n.), filo
threaten, to, fa'asai
threshold, larynx, fa'ai
thrust, step, to, soli
throw, cast, to, togi, lafo
throw away, to, lafo
throw down, to, tu'uitalo
thumb, lima matua
thunder, faititili
Thursday, Asotofi
tie, to, nonoa, fusi
tight, tense, sa'o
tile, brick (n.), ma'a ome'a
time (n.), itulā
time: what is the time? pe e fia le vai aso? or, pe e fia le 'itu lā? or, po'ua lā le fia? time, to appoint a, tu'u po
tired, languid, lailoa
to, as far as, se'ia, e o'o
tobacco, tapa'a
to-day, asonei, anaileilā
toe (n.), tama'īvae
together, fa'atasi ma
to-morrow, i le taeao
to-morrow morning, vaean
tool (of trade), fa'iva
tooth, nifo
top, summit, tumutumu
torch, seri
torrent, to, fa'aiāgā
tortoise-shell, 'o le uga le laumei
touch, to, pa'i, papa atu, tago
towards, against, e laga mai
towel, 'ie solo
tower (n.), 'olo
town, aai, 'ai
trade, barter, to, fa'iva, tofiga, fa'aiatu
trade, calling (n.), fa'iva
trader, dealer, fa'aiatua'a
trample down, to, soli
transgress, to, sopo
transparent, mālamalama
trap, snare (n.), mailei
tavel, to, savali, atu i le malaga
tread, step, to, soli
treasure, store (n.), 'oa, 'oloa
tree, la'au
tremble, shiver, to, getete
trespass (n.) solitulafono
trial, examination, su'esu'ega
tribute, lafoga
trick, artifice, toagāti
trimming, welt (of shoe), ta'ai
trinket, jewellery, teu
trousers, 'ofu va'e
true, genuine, moni, moi
trumpet, pu. See sound
truth, fa'amoni, fa'amaoni
try, exert, to, toa'manua

tub, water-, tuluga
tube, pipe, maga
Tuesday, Asotua
tumour, swelling, patu
turn (on a lathe), to, ta'avili
turn about, to, liu
turn aside, to, fa'asaga
turn away, turn out, to, tuli 'ese
turn the back, to, liutu
turn oneself (in bed, etc.), to, fāliu
turn over, to, liu
turn round, invert, to, toe fo' atu
turtle, laumei
twine, thread, 'afa, manoa
twins, masaga
twist, plait, to, fili, fa'api'o
typhus, ma'i vevela, toto vela

udder, susu
ugly, matapua'a
unclean, _leaga_
uncooked, _fa'alevela_
derculthing, _mitiafu_
understand, to, _iloa_, _malamalama_
derstanding, judgment, _fa'atuata fa'iai_
unfaithful, _pepelo_
ungrateful, _agavale_
unintentionally, _faafuasei_
unite, to, _faatasi_
unripe, _moto_
untie, to, _faaiala_
up, upwards, _'c_
upright, erect, _fa'atuiu_
uproar, _fouvale_, _ta'alili vale_
upset, overthrow, to, _tafu'e_
use, to, _masani, fa'a —_
useful, profitable, _aogă_

walk in the moonlight, to, _evacvaga i le masina_

wall, partition, _pa_. There are no permanent walls in Samoan native houses, mats ('o pola) being hung up where necessary to serve the purpose

wall, hedge, _'aupta, pa_

wander hither and thither, to, _atuatu, feotai_

wander about, lead a nomadic life, to, _maumausolo_
want, deficiency, _aunōa_
want, lack, to, _mativa, aunōa_
war (n.), _tava, tau_
warm, to, _lagilagi_
warm (adj.), _vevela_

warth, _vevela_

warmth, _vevela_

warn, caution, to, _apoapo_
warrior, _fialifia, tagata tau_

war-ship, _manuao (“man-of-war”)_

wart, _sila ‘ilalo_
waste, squander, to, _māumāu, fa'a —_

watch (time-piece), _uati_ (introduced word)

watch, to, _leo_
watch, to keep night-, _alāla_
watchman, sentinel, _leoleo_
watch over, to, _fa'amau_
water (n.), _vai_

water, to fetch, _utu vai_
water-closet, _fa'ie iu_
waterfall, _afu_
water-hen, coot, _ve'a_

wave, billow, _galu, sou_
weak, feeble, _vaivai_
weapon, _fana, 'aupega_
weary, tired, _taiola, jiamoe_

weave, to, _lāga_
wedding, _fa'aipoipoga_

Wednesday, _Asololu_

week, _vaisano sā_

weep, cry over, to, _tagi_
weight, _lua_

well (of water), _vai'eli_

well-bred, _vaogofē_

well up, erupt, to, _puna_
west, sisifo
wet, moist, susu
wet, moisten, to, fa'asusu
wheel (n.), mea e taavalevale
whip (n.), sasa
whistle, to, fa'aiili
white, sinasina
white-haired, 'ulusina
whiten, to, fa'asina
wicked, atili
widen, to, fa'alantele
widow, fāfine 'ua 'oti le tane
widower, tagata 'ua 'oti le avā
wife, avā
wife (of a chief), faletua
wife (of a king), masiofo
wild, fierce, auvao, fe'ai
wild-duck, taloa
willful, ua ma'a'a
will, mind (n.), loto; finagolo (chief-word)
will, to do one's, fa'alomālīē
willing, to be; intend, to, fia, loto, māfai
wind, breeze, matagi, agi
window, fa'amalama
wine, uaina
wing (n.), apa'au, aapau
wink, to, 'emo
winter, vaipalolo, tau maalili
wish for, desire, to, manao
wither, dry up, to, magomago
without, na, e aunoa
with that, and then, ina ia, ia
witness (n.), moli
woman, wife, fāfine
woman, old, tō'omatua
woman (wife of a chief), faletua
wonder, marvel (n.), vavega
wonder, to, ofo
wonderful, silisili 'ese
wood, bush, la'au, fa'i'e
word (n.), upu; afioga (chief-word)
work (n.), galuega
work, to, galue
workman, tufuga fa'i fale
world, lagi, lalolagi
worm (n.), anufe, ilo, ipo
worry, be anxious, to, tausi
worship, ijo; tapuai (worship God)
wound (n.), manu'a
wound, to, manu'a
wrap up, to, aui
wreath, garland, pale, pou
wrist, tapulima
write, to, tusi
writer, 'o le tusitusi
writing-tablet, slate, ma'atusi

Y
yard, court, toloā
yawn, to, mavava
year, tausaga
yellow, samasama
yellowish-brown, 'ena'ena
yes, ē, ioe, 'e lea lava
yesterday, anaanafi
yoke (n.), amo
young (adj.), ititi
young (of animals) (adj.), taamoa
young one (of animals), toloa'i, tama'i
youth, lad, taulealea, taulelea;
mānaia (chief-word)

SAMOAN-ENGLISH

A
'a, when, if
aa, root (n.)
a'a, to kick
a'ai, to eat
aai, town, village
aami, to send for
aano, meat
aoo, hand (chief-word), limb (n.)
aoo taumatau, right hand
aoo tauagavale, left hand
aapa, to stretch (out); something
aapau, wing (n.)
aau, to send
a’au, cliff, crag; to swim
aauleoa, to send immediately
a’e, up, upwards
a’ea’e, to ascend
a’ega, hill, rising ground
ae e ui lava i lea, nevertheless, yet
a’e mai, to come up
a’e pe’itai, but (conj.)
aeto, eagle
af, storm (n.)
afa, half (adj.)
a’afame, daughter of a father
’afai, when, if
afaina, danger
afia, when
afiafe, room (in a house)
afi, fire (n.)
afiafi, evening, afternoon
afio, to come (chief-word)
afioga, word, order, will (mind), grandeur
afio ifo, to come down
afio mai ia !, welcome!
afitusi, match (lucifer)
afu, perspiration
’afua ona, to begin from, originate
aga, to act, do
agaga, spirit, soul
agaga pa’ia, Holy Ghost
agaleaga, to act basely
agalelei, to be kind, amiable
agafa’atamaali’i, honoured
agamalū, pious, meek
agasa’a, sin (n.); to sin
agavale, ungrateful
āgeli, angel
agī, storm (n.)
ai, ai lava, at the beginning of a sentence means indeed. Ex.: ai sa alofa tele lona uso, he loved his brother very much indeed; he must indeed have loved him
ā’i, fence, hedge, village
’ai, to eat
āiga, family, kinship, tribe
aila, stag
aioi, to beg, request
ai se â?, why?
aitalafu, to borrow
aitu, ghost, apparition
ala, to get up, rise; to scratch; to originate, begin from
ala, road, path
alāfau, cheek
alāfu, cheek
ala fa’apefea, staircase, ladder
alaga, to call, cry
alaga i vae, ham, bacon
ala, to watch, guard
alalafaga, night-watch (n.)
ala sopoa, ford (n.); mountain-path
alātua, field-path
ala u’amea, railway
alei, to drive away, expel
ali, cushion, pillow
alia, stream; valley through which a stream flows
alii, chief, gentleman
alii ave ’au, captain
aliilai, to rule, govern
aloe ’ese, to hold fast to; to avoid
alo’afa, to love; love (n.); favour (n.); greeting, to salute; to spare, save
alo’fa’i, palm of the hand
alo’fiva’e, sole of the foot
alu atu, to go
alu mai, to come
alu ’ese, to go away
alu ’alu, drop (n.)
aluga, pillow (n.)
amaise, together with
amata, to begin
amata, beginning
amiole’a, behaviour, conduct
amiole’tou, just, righteous
amiole’tou, unjust
amo, beam (of wood); to carry, bear
amoina, to take the burden upon oneself
'amu, coral
'amu 'ula, red coral
amuia, happy, contented
amuli, the following (adj.) (referring to time)
ana, cave (n.)
'ana'ana, to obey
analeilá, to-day; a short time ago
anamua, previously; ancestors
ananafi, yesterday
anapo, the approaching night
anapogí, to abstain from, to fast
anapogí, to abstain from, to fast
anianiy, onion
anogase, muscle
anufí, worm, caterpillar
ao, as if
ao, morning; cloud (n.); day (as opposed to night)
ao'ai, to bring up, educate; to command; to threaten; to throw to
a'oa'o, to teach; to learn
aogá, use (n.), useful; need (n.), necessary
aofái, number (n.), quantity
a'oga, instruction, school
a'o lei, before
'apa, sheet-metal; box (n.)
apa'au, wing (n.)
'apa memea, ore
apefái, ladder
Apelila, April
api, to be staying, to pass the night
apitaga, hut
apó, quick
apoapo, to warn, to admonish
apoapoa'i, to admonish
apogaleveleve, spider
arió, silver
areto, bread
asa, to wade through (water)
asaga, ford (n.)
asiasi, to visit; to look after
aso, day (see Grammar)
asonei, to-day
asu, smoke (n.)
'ata, shade, shadow (n.)
'à'a, to laugh
ataga, laughter
ataaalá, sunset-glow
ataláve, scorpion
atáli, future, next (adj.)
atáli, son
atama'i, prudent, reasonable
ate, liver (organ of the body)
atevae, calf (of the leg)
ati, to build
atigi, finger-nail
atigi vae, hoof, claw
atigá, to carve faces (on rocks, etc.)
atili, very; bad, mischievous
ato, basket; to cover
'atoa, quite
'atoatoa, perfect; sum (n.)
atonu, perhaps
átu le lolo, to be pleased
atu, rank, line (n.)
atulado, centipede
atatuwale, uneasy, excited, frightened
atulá'au, chest, case
au, needle; gall, bile
'au, people, soldiery. (Note that "the people" is singular, 'o le 'au.)
'áu, shaft; handle (of a tool)
'ana, lest
'auá, because, as; then
auáe, sea-fish
auaga, loin, haunch
auala, road
auala laupapa, bridge (n.)
'aua le se auona, except
aualuma, the house used in common by girls of a village
'au'auna, to serve; servant
au'e, to send away
áufana, bow (archery)
augani, to curse, bewitch
áuli, to iron, smooth
au mai, to give (when the person acting is the recipient)
aumau, to stay anywhere as a stranger
aumea, guest
aumoe, to arrange a marriage
aumoega, matrimonial match-making
aunoa, defect, want, mistake
auoli, midday
'aupā, rampart, wall
'aupā'ai, fence, hedge
aupolapola, an improvised fan
auro, gold
ausa, fog; steam
'āu sailo, ear
'au upega, arms, equipment
'auva'a, sailor; sea-beach
'auvai, bank, shore
ava, to honour, respect
'avā, beard (n.); harbour;
  kava (a native drink)
avae, to take away
avāga, to live in concubinage
'avā papalagi, spirituous liquor
avane, to give
avanoa, to open; open (adj.)
avatu, to give; to send (when
  the person acting gives, or
  sends something. See aumai)
avatu se taui, to repay
ave, to take
avea ma, to keep, put aside for a
  purpose
avega, load, burden (n.); work
avegofie, light (to carry)
ave'es, to take away
ave ifo, to take down, lift down
ave ma, to keep, put aside

E
ē, through, by; yes
e'a, well? indeed? (used only
  interrogatively)
e aunoa, without
'e'ena, brown
e i ai, there is, there are
efuefu, dust, powder (n.); red-
  dish-brown
e laga mai, against
e lata ane, near, close by
e le'ai, no
e le'ai se, nobody
'ele'ele, mud, earth
'ele'elea, dirty
'eli, to dig; ditch
elo, to smell strongly
'emo, to wink
e moni !, sure !, certain!
'emo o le mata, moment
'ena'ena, yellowish-brown
e pei, such as
'ese, away; foreign, different;
  big
esi, melon
e su'at, instead of, for
ete, purse; sack
'eto'eto, to lick, lap
eva, to go for a walk
evaevaga, to go for a walk by
  moonlight
eu 'ese, to draw out, pull out
e ui lava ina, even if, even when
fa'agoto, to sink
fa'agutu, bridle (horse's)
fa'ailoga, to draw forth; to mark, to delineate
fa'aiini, to whistle, pipe
fa'aiinua, to make one drunk
fa'aiteite, to shorten, diminish; to withdraw a few paces
fa'aiu, to finish, conclude
fa'alaina, to suffer hunger
fa'alaleaga, to dissemble
fa alata, to betray
fa*alautele, to enlarge, extend
fa'aléaoogā, to despise, to fall in one's estimation
fa'alelei ma, to reconcile, to be agreeable
fa'alētumau, to be inconsistent
fa'alevela, raw, uncooked
fa'alilo, secret, concealed
fa'aliiu, to translate
fa'alogo, to hear
fa'alogo-lofo, to be silent
fa'alomaliē, to do one's will
fa'aloletetele, joyful, contented
fa'amafanana, to comfort, console
fa'amafola atu, to open (the hand or a book)
fa'amagalo, to pardon, forgive
fa'ana'i, epidemic
fa'amalama, window
fa'amalamala, to shine
fa'amaligi, to spill, shed
fa'amalo-lo, to cure, heal
fa'amalosi, fatigued
fa'amalū, to bathe (chief-word)
fa'amalu, screen, shade (n.)
fa'amalualii, to honour, respect
fa'amalulu, to cool
fa'amamā, to clean
fa'amānaia, to make beautiful
fa'amanaulaga, memory, remembrance
fa'amanaui, to bless
fa'amoni, true, faithful
fa'amasani, to exercise, practice
fa'amasisi, to insult
fa'amasese, to separate
fa'amatala, to explain, translate
fa'amatala upu, interpreter
fa'amau, to watch over; to hold fast to; to fasten, stitch on to; hook (n.); nail (n.)
fa'amaualuga, pride, haughtiness
fa'amaufo'a'alave, noose, snare
fa'amaulalo, to degrade oneself
fa'amauama, to squander, waste
fa'amāva'e, to bid farewell
fa'amoea, cover, wrapper; sheath
fa'amoease, to lull to sleep
fa'amolemole, please! (entreat- ing)
fa'amoeemoe, to hope, expect
fa'amu, to set fire to
fa'anoanoa, sad, afflicted
fa'anunununu, to inquire; to incite, stir up
fa'aofu, to dress
fa'aola, to save, rescue
fa'a'ole'ole, to cheat, deceive
fa'aonoono, to rouse, excite
fa'a'oa'o, to convey, bring to
fa'aopoopo, to increase
fa'aosooso, to goad, entice
fa'apai'a, to consecrate, dedicate
fa'apalepale, patience; patient (adj.)
fa'apa'ū, to fall prostrate
fa'apea, so, thus
fa'apea mai, to speak thus
fa'apefe'a, how? (adj.)
fa'apei, to initiate
fa'apena, so big, as large as that
fa'airopio'io, to twist, disfigure
fa'apogisa, to darken
fa'apolopo, to collect, assemble
fa'apolopota, assembly, meeting
fa'apupula, to polish, brighten
fa'apu'upu'u, to shorten
fa'asaga, to turn aside
fa'asai, to threaten
fa'asa'a, to punish
fa'asa'o, rescue, save
fa'asaua, to pursue, oppress
fa'asese, to transport; to lead astray
fa'asilasila, to make known
fa'asilasila mai, publication
fa'asina, to whiten
fa'asino, to explain
fa'asoo, to bind up, unite
fa'ataalise, to hurry, go quickly
fa'ataapeape, to scatter, disperse
fa'asino, to whiten
fa'asoo, to explain
fa'ataalise, to hurry, go quickly
fa'ataapeape, to scatter, disperse
fa'atufuna, to destroy
fa'atafunama, destruction
fa'ataaga, picture (n.)
fa'atagataotaua, prisoner, prisoner of war
fa'atali, to wait, expect, hope
fa'atamala, to wait, expect, hope
fa'atauaso, to blind
fa'atauasoina, to become blind
fa'atamala, to wait, expect, hope
fa'atauenamu, to scoff at
fa'atauamoi, to spoil, mar (a thing)
fa'atauaua, to hang up
fa'ataua’ana, common, customary
fa'ate’a, to remove; forsaken (adj.)
fa'ate’a’ese, to drive away, expel
fa'atele, to enlarge, magnify
fa'atito, to overthrow, to let drop
fa'atitipa, lazy, negligent
fa'ato’a, first, at first
fa'ataovai, bridegroom (obsolete)
fa'ataoga, garden
fa'ato’anofofotane, bride (obsolete)
fa'atoatele, to increase, enlarge
fa'atosea, to molest
fa'atoga, to request, beg for alms
fa'atoilalo, to subdue
fa'atoni, copy, pattern; to give someone a copy or pattern from which to work
fa'ataoto, example, parable
fa'atoitō, to water, to rain
fa'atū, to place, set up
fa'atua, to believe, confide
fa'atua, to hesitate, remain
fa'atuma, to fix, settle
fa'atusa, to compare, to be similar
fa'atū, upright, erect
fa'atūmu, to fill
fa'auilui, to blacken
fa'a’uma, to finish
fa'aua (l), look!
fa'aua, understanding, intelligence
fa’au’u, to anoint
fa’auā, to be envious
fa’aua, to build, establish
fa’auai’ai le loto, to cause fright; to lose courage
fa’aualea, to behave foolishly
fa’auamo’losi, furious, insane
fa’auavau, everlasting
fa’auave, to hurry
fa’afā, precipice; nether regions
fa’afite, firewood
fa’afine, woman
fa’aga, to line; feed
fa’agatua, to fight, struggle
fa’agatuaga; fight, combat (n.)
fa’agota, to fish
fa’afagū, to wake, arouse
fa’afu, bottle (n.)
fa’afu pa’u, leather bag
fa’i, to make, do
fa’i, banana
fa’iaga, to consider one a fool
fa’iaga, to consider one a fool
fa’i, brains, intellect
fa’a ‘oga, teacher
fa’i au, to advise anyone; to arrange (order) anything
fa’iava, workman
fa’i’au, preacher
fa’ifolaua, baker
fa’igā, to turn over and over
VOCABULARY

faigaluega, work (n.); to work
faigata, difficult
faigofie, easy
faila, to sail
failauga, orator of a village
fai ma ..., to make, or do, something for someone
faimasae, to mend, patch
fai pa'u o le manu, tanner; to tan
faipule, member of the council
faiso'o, constant, continual
faisua, shell (n.)
faitaula, to count, reckon, read
faitaulaga, priest
faititili, thunder (n.)
faitotoa, door, gate
faiva, trade, calling, employment; tool of trade
fala, mat (n.)
falaH, to bake
falaoa, bread
falaoamata, meal (ground corn)
fale, house, building
fale fa'amasino, court of justice
fale fai'aoga, school (n.)
fale'ie, tent
fale laupapa, wooden house
fale 'oloa, 'oa, shop, store
fale papalagi, a European's house
fale puipui, prison
fale sā, church
fale sāito, barn, shed
fale talimo, talimalo, guest-house
fale ui, closet
fale 'ulu, house built of bread-fruit tree timber
faletua, wife of a chief
fāliu, to turn oneself over
fālo, to stretch out, spread
fana, gun; to shoot
fānā, to skim
fanā, ship's mast
fana'e, to rise (of water)
fanafanua, cannon
fānau, to give birth to; birth; children (in general)
fano, to perish

fanua, land, piece of land
fanua laugatas, plain (n.)
fanua oti, churchyard
fao, nail (n.)
fao, to rob; tagata fao mea, robber
fasa, insane
fasi, to strike, to kill; piece (n.)
fāsiga, murder; battle (n.)
fasioti, to kill, strike dead
fata, to bear, carry; barrow (n.); rack, trestle
fata fa'ataawaleva, waggon, cart
fata faitaaulaga, old age
fatafata, breast (n.); sprig, shoot
faitaga, to hate
fatiū, to stand upright (of leaves)
fatu, heart (as organ); seed, kernel, stone (of fruit)
fanifatua'i, to meditate
fau, fau-tree
faufauava, engaged to be married (referring to a man)
faufauteane, engaged to be married (of a woman)
faupu'e, to heap, pile up
faupu'ega, heap, pile (n.)
feaga'iga, alliance, league
fealua'i, to ramble about (plural, feoa'i)
feanu, to spit
feanuga, spittle
fe'a, message, news; to order something to be fetched; to send for
fe'a'u, to scratch, scrape
fe'e, cuttlefish
fefe, fright; to frighten
fe'efē'e, elephantiasis
fefe'te, to ferment; to be puffed up
fefe'u, tough, tenacious
feita'ata'i, hatred, enmity
felafolafoa'i, to meditate
femaliua'i, to go round about; to reside
SAMOAN-ENGLISH

fememea'i, despair (n.)
feoa'i, to associate with. (See also fealua'i)
feoi, to complain
fesē'a'i, to go astray, lose one's way
fesili, to ask; question (n.)
feosasoani, to help, stand by anyone
fetala'i, to happen
fetala'i, to talk
fetala'iga, speech, oration
fetaula'iga ala, cross-road
fetai, to ask; question (n.)
fesea'i, to go astray, lose one's way
fesili, to ask; question (n.)
fesoasoani, to help, stand by anyone
fetaia'i, to happen
fitafita, brave (adj.); soldier
fa'o, to cure, heal
fao, to wound
foa'i, to hand over, deliver up
foāmoa, egg
foe, rudder
foeulili, helm
fofoga, face; voice (chief-word)
fofoa, to brood, hatch
fogā 'ele'ele, earth, soil; in common, general (adj.)
fofōaoai, waters, flood
fola, to swell up; to roll up

folafo, to roll up; to develop; to carry forward; to explain
foliga, likeness, resemblance
folo, to gulp, swallow
folo 'atoa, to twist, interlace
foma'i, physician
fono, council meeting
fotu, to grow green, flourish; to beat out; to give birth to
(chief-word)
fou, new, fresh
fowale, disobedient
fua, measure (n.); to measure:
  fua-fruit; in vain; by oneself; without motive; naked
fuā, eager; jealous; zeal
fu'a, flag (n.)
fula'au, blossom; trees
fu'e, to take up, pick up
fulula, to swell up
fulufulu, to clean, wash
fuga, flower, bloom (n.)
fui, to dip; to fill
fuia, starling
fuifui, vine, pigeon (introduced word)
fula, swelling
fuli, to upset; to roll, turn about
fulu, feather
fulufulu, hair
funa e !, girl!
fusi, bandage; to bind; pool, swamp
fusu, fist; to fight with the fists

G

gaa, entrails
gaga, thread (n.); family; sex
gaganu, speech, language
galo, to forget
galue, to work
galuega, work (n.)
ga'o, fat (n.); bacon
gaad, stony
gaqae'a, desert, waste, empty (adj.)
gāi, thief; to steal; theft
gapēpē, crooked; to be bent, curved
gase, to splash
gase, languid; dry (adj.); lifeless
gaseʻeleʻele, eclipse of the moon
gasegase, to be unwell (chief-word)
gasetoto, eclipse of the sun
gata, snake
gataaga, end (n.)
gateʻir, to tremble, shiver
gau, to break to pieces
gaugau, to hurt oneself; to hang down (of leaves, etc.)
genogeno, to beckon
gogo, sea-gull
gol, to sink, go under
goto o le lā, sunset
gu, to grumble, growl
gugū, dumb
gutu, mouth

I

i, in; on; up; against; for
ia, these
'ia, fish
i ai, there; whom; to whom
ialoma, diamond
i aso fai so'o, daily
'ie, cloth, material
'ie afu, carpet
'ie fa''amalama, window-curtain
'ie laulau, table-cloth
'ie lino, linen
'ie manoe, blanket
'ie pu'ipu'i, curtain
'ie vavae, cotton
i fofo, out of doors
i fea, whence?, where?, whither?
i fo, a species of chestnut
ifo, below, down, downwards; to submit; to bow
ifo atu, to adore, worship
ifo ifo, to come down
ifoʻai, declivity, slope
ifotoʻele, to bow down to the ground
igoa, name (n.)

iinei, here
iite, to guess, prophesy
ila, spot, stain (n.)
ilalo, below, at the bottom
i le, and then
i lea mea ma lea mea, here and there
i le va, between
ili, fan (n.)
'ilī, to saw; to file
'ilīganoa, scar (n.)
ilola, outer skin
ili pu, to sound the trumpet
ilitea, white fan
ilo, worm (n.)
iloa, to see
iloa lelei, knowledge
iloga, preference, prerogative
i huga, above, aloft
i huma, before, opposite (place)
imoa, mouse
ina a, before (conj.)
ina ia, in order that
ina sei'a, meanwhile
ini a, with which, with what
ini, to pinch, nip
'ino, to hate, despise; hatred
'inoa, mud, dirt
inu, to drink
i'ō, there
i'oe, yes
ipo, worm (n.)
ipu, vessel, cup, goblet
ipu 'ai, plate
ipu malamalama, drinking-glass
isa i, what a shame!
islua, to cut in two
isū, nose
isumu, rat
ita, angry; enemy
i tafatafa o, near, beside
i tala atu, on that side of
i tala mai, on this side of
itiiti, little, small
i totonu, in it, therein
itū, custom, usage, party
itu, outside, outwardly
itūāiga, race (of people), sex, family
itu i luma, front, forepart
itulāua war-party
itulā, hour of the day
itupō, hour of the night
iu, to finish; to go out; end (n.)
iuga, end, termination
iva, nine
ivi, bone
ivi aso, rib

K
kariola, cart, waggon
ki, key
kovano, governor

L
lā, sun; sail (n.); leaf; bough
la'au, tree, shrub; wood
la'au fu'alava, threshold
la'au talatala, thistle
la'au tu'itu'i, thorn
lafi, to hide, conceal
lafo, to throw away
lafo, to throw hither and thither
lafatu, to throw hither and thither
lafu, flock, herd (n.)
lafu'ā, thin, lean
lafulemu, fat, greasy
lagā, to spin, weave
lagi, heaven; to sing
lago, fly (n.)
logomeli, bee
logomumumu, wasp
lagolago, to support
lagona, to hear, perceive
lailoa, tired, feeble
laisa, rice
laiiti, little, small
lā la'au, branch, bough
lalolagi, earth, world
lamepa, lamp, candlestick
lamo'mole, smooth, sleek
lauvalu'a'ava, green
laosi, table
lapoa, lapopo'oa, thick; corpulent
lasi, often, frequently
latalata, near; to come close to
laloa, stable (n.)
lai'ō'a, brave (adj.)
lau, broad; leaf
lauaita, bustle, turmoil
lauapi, camp (n.)
lā'u atu, to bring a thing to some place
lau 'ele'ele, soil, earth
lauga, speech, oration
laugatasi, region, table-land
laugutu, lip
laualau, table (n.); to set (put before, offer
laualafa'ava, tongue
laumata, eyelids
laumei, turtle
laumua, capital (city or town)
laupapa, board, plank
laupese, musical instrument
lautele, broad, wide
la'ai'ulu, hair
lava, very; in fact, indeed
lāvalāva, waist-cloth
lavea, to be hit, struck
lavacei, to save, liberate
lefulefu, ashes
lele, to fly, soar
lelefua, butterfly
lēmafaitaulia, innumerable
leo, voice; cry (n.); to call, cry
leoleo, watchman, shepherd; official
lepela, lepros
lepeti, to spoil, destroy
leva, long since, long ago
liai, to root out, or up
italia, to shake, toss
liligi, to pour out, let run
liliu au, to apply oneself to
liliu 'ese, to turn away, avert
liliuau, to gnash the teeth
lilo, homelike; to cover; to conceal
lima, hand (n.); arm (n.); five
lima matua, thumb
lima tavana, left hand
lima taura, right hand
liu (see liliu), to change one's mind
liutua, to turn one's back on
loa, immediately; long, tall
lofi, to push, thrust
logo, to hear; cry (n.); report, news; drum
lolo, flood, high water; greasy, fatty
loloto, depth
loto, will (n.); heart (as seat of the passions); to be willing
loua, yard, compound
loto'a, brave (adj.)
lou, religion
luā, the day after to-morrow
lua, hole, pit, ditch
luai (see uluai), the first
lúlú, to jolt, shake
лу, owl
luma, shame (n.), disgrace (n.)
lumana'i, to be before someone
lupe, pigeon, dove

M

ma, whitish (colour)
mā, to be ashamed
ma'a, stone
ma'a'a, stony, hard, stiff
ma'ai, sharp
ma'alili, cold (adj.)
ma'a'omea, brick (n.)
ma'a tusi, tablets, pocket-book
maea, chain (n.); cord, rope
maea wamea, chain (n.)
mafa'i, to be able, willing
mafa'afau, to look at; prudent
mafa'ana, to sneeze
mafa'u'e, earthquake
maga, tube, pipe
magomago, dry (adj.); to dry up
ma'i, sick; illness
ma'i alili, shivers, a cold
ma'i fa'a'iiva, consumption
mafēa, whence? where from?
maila, mile
maile, fraud, deceit; trap, snare (n.)
maile, dog (n.)
ma'imāliu, cramp (n.); lunatic (adj.)

maimoa, to become acquainted with
ma'itiga, ache, pain (n.)
mai'u, finger-nail
ma'i vevela, fever
maia, unhappiness
malaga, journey; travelling-party
malae, market (n.)
malai'a, ruin, deprivation
malalā, coal
malemo, drowned (adj.)
malepalepa, decrepit
mālīē, beautiful, splendid
maie, shark
maieō, bravo!
ma'iu, to die (chief-word)
ma'iu, to go
ma'iu mai, to come
ma'īuga, going out (n.); death
ma'ō, empire, dominion; conqueror
mālōlo, healthy, sound
mālōlōga, rest; health
ma'ū, stillness; soft, mellow
ma'ūlū, cold (adj.)
ma'ūlumālū, temple
mamā, clean; light
māmā, lungs; ring (n.)
māmā, to chew
mamafā, heavy
mamalu, honoured; honour; splendour, pomp
mamo, far, remote
māmā pale, consumption
mamau, stopped, constipated
māmoe, sheep
mana, might (n.), power
mānaia, son of a chief; pretty (adj.)
mana'o, to wish for, desire; love; wish (n.); to have a yearning
manatu, to think; to shut; to remind; thought (n.); intention
mānavā, belly; to breathe
manāva, breath; ghost
manisfinifi, thin, slender
manogi, smell (n.), scent (n.); to smell, scent
t mano'a, twine, string
manū, during
manu, messenger; a runner who carries messages for a village
manu, animal, beast, bird
manu fāfine, female
manu fe'a'i, beast of prey
manu felele'i, bird
manu poa, male
manu tagi, Indian turtle-dove, wild pigeon
manu vaefā, domestic animal, four-footed beast
manu'a, wound (n.); to wound
manu'uo, war-ship
manūia, happiness; happy, blessed, glad; blessing (n.); welfare
manumalo, to overpower, subdue; preponderance
māo'o, satisfied; to satiate
maota, palace, chief's house
mapu, to recover, rest
mapusaga, rest (n.), recovery
mapusela, breathing-trouble
masa'a, to pour out, spill
māsae, to tear, rend
masaga, twins
masalo, to accept; to believe; to conjecture, surmise
masalosalovale, to doubt
māsani, to be accustomed; to use; custom (n.); to associate with
masima, salt
masina, moon
māsina, month
masiifo, queen
masoā, starch-meal
mata, face (n.). eye; to see
mataala, to wake
matafaga, beach, shore, coast
matagaluega, duty; trade, calling
matagi, wind
matagofē, splendour; magnificent
mata'i, head of family or party
mata'isau, joiner
mata'itu, shameless, indecent
mata'itusi, letter of alphabet
mata'īvi, blind
matalelei, beautiful (of the face)
matamata, to consider, look at
matamuli, modest
matapeapea, avarice
matapogisa, swoon, fainting-fit
matapu'a, ugly
matasesepa, squint-eyed; to squint
mata'u, to be afraid
mata'ū, avaricious; avarice; envy, grudge
mātau, fish-hook
mātau, axe, hatchet
mataupu, instruction
mata'utia, fear, fright
matavale, stupid, cowardly; awkward fellow
mate, dead (adj.)
matelama, sober
mati, fig
mativa, poor, needy; to need
matu, north
matuā, very, definite, sure
matuā iloa, to be sure, to know precisely
mātua, old; parents
mātua'otia, orphan (n.); orphan (adj.)
matutu, dry
matu'u, heron
mau, to acquire, find, hit on, gain, deserve
māu, evidence; to dwell
maualuga, high
mauga, mountain
mauga loa, mountain in Samoa
mauga mu, volcano
maulaga, see maualuga
maulalo, high and deep (the Samoan has but one word to express this); low, common, little, humble, meekness
maumaga, planting
maumau, to waste
maumausolo, to wander about, to lead a nomadic life (mau, live; solo, round about)  
maupu‘epu‘e, heap (n.); hill  
mausati, quiet (adj.); to be saved from  
mau‘oa, rich, wealthy  
māvāc; to cease; disappear, pass away; to go away, take leave  
mea, thing; place (n.); things in general  
mea alofa, gift, present  
mea e ‘ai, article of food  
mea e ponā, mistake, fault  
mea e taavale, wheel (n.)  
meli, honey  
melini, melon  
mili, to rub  
milo, to spin  
misa, fight (n.); to begin a fight  
mitamila, to boast, glory in  
miti, dream (n.); to dream; to suck  
moa, hen  
moana, sea; deep blue  
moanasāusau, the high seas  
mōe, to sleep  
moega, bed, couch  
mogamoga, beetle, moth  
mo‘i, true  
moia‘a, cocoanut fibre  
moli, soap  
moli‘aina, orange  
molimau, evidence; witness  
momo‘e, to run  
momoli, to accuse; cut up, parcel out  
moni, true, faithful; truth  
mō‘o, lizard  
moto, unripe  
motu, multitude; heap; to be separated. Ex.: mu‘u motu, island  
mu, to burn  
mua‘au, vanguard  
muai, at first, previously  
muamua, previously  
mu‘ulu, forehead  
mu‘i, angry, grumbling  
muimui, to grumble; be provoking  
muli, to end; end (n.)  
muli‘ai, at last  
muli‘ou, rearguard  
mulilua, to commit adultery  
mulimuli, to follow  
mulivae, heel (of foot)  
mulumulu, to wash, bathe  
mūmū, red  
mūmū o afi, flame  
mumulu, to bask, warm oneself  
musu, to refuse, have no desire  
mutia, grass  

N  
na, but, besides  
nā, to bury  
nai, a few, some  
nai‘fi, knife  
namu, gnat, mosquito  
namu, lime (produced from coral)  
nanā, secret, concealed  
nanamu, taste (n.)  
nanei, soon, soon after  
nanu, to stammer, murder speech; to speak a foreign language  
ná ‘o lenei, rather  
nauamati, dry, arid; dead, deceased  
negonego, same as genogeno (the n in Samoan is often pronounced ng)  
nei, now  
né‘i, lest  
nifo, tooth; horn  
nila, needle  
nini, to besmear  
niu, cocoanut palm  
nuanua, rainbow  
nō, nono, to borrow; to lend  
noa, to bind  
nofo, to sit; to stay, remain  
nofo‘a, seat, chair; saddle  
nofo‘a afi, railway-train  
nofoaiga, government
nofo' a fa'ataawale, waggon, cart
nofo'ai'i, throne
nofofilemu, to be quiet, calm
nofo sa'o, to be quiet
nono, to hang
nutipala, to bruise, crush
nu'u, country, people; region
nu'u motu, island (see motu)
nu'u 'ese, foreign people;
heathen (in the Bible)

olo'a, treasure, store (n.)
olo'a tāua ma . . . property
ome'a, loam, earth, soil
omi, to throng, press, push
omomoi, sponge (n.)
'ona, poisonous
'ona, poisoned; to drink to excess
'ona, that, his
ona — ai lea, then
'ona o, on account of
one, powder (n.)
oneone, sand
ono, six
'onosa'i, patient (adj.)
o'o, to reach to, come to, arrive
'o'olo, hoarse, husky
'o'ona, bitter
'o'ope'ope, to have, possess
'osi, to conclude an alliance; offer up
oso, to spring, attack
oso, stores, provisions; a basket filled with certain articles of food, used as an offering to the "aitu"
olā, ripe, mature
otaoi, manure, dung
ote, to scold, reprove
otī, to die; dead (adj.)
'otī, goat (from the English word)
o'ou, to bark
'ou, I

pa, wall, partition
pā, to burst
pā, dead, deceased; unfruitful
pa'a, craw-fish
pa'e'e, lean, slender
pa'epa'e, white
paepae, plaster
pa'i, to touch
pa'iā, sacred, holy
pa'ie, putrid, rotten
paio, kitchen
paia, to rot, putrefy
pala 'ai, cowardly
palapala, mud, morass
pale, ridge, ledge, brim
palu, to mix, stir
pani, pot, pan (introduced word)
panisina, lime, mortar, cement
papa, even, level, flat
pāpā, rock (n.)
pāpā, to crash, burst
papa atu, to touch, handle
papala, ulcer, abscess; putrid
papalagi, foreigner; foreign, strange
paseka, Easter
pule, shell
pule, authority; to rule, to command
pulou, any sort of head-covering
pulu, pitch, tar
pūlū, bullet (introduced word)
pulumatau, horned cattle; meat
puna, to flow, to well up, to boil, to seethe
punavai, spring of water
puni, to shut, close
punou, to bend, to bow, stoop
punou mata, to lower the eyes
punu, spoon
pupula, to glitter, shine
pupū, to gargle
pupū, opened cocoanut-shell
pusa, to glow
pusaloa, comet
pula'i, to order, command (chief-word)
poloaiga, law, command, order
pologa, slave; one who does heavy work for another
pona, knot (n.)
pona'ivi, joint (of limb); gristle
popo, cocoanut
polo, prudent, wise, intelligent
polopolo, to gather, collect, assemble
potu, room (in a house)
potu moe, bedroom
potu nofo, sitting-room
potu ta'ele, bath-room
pou, rash, cutaneous eruption; wreath, garland
pōu, post, pale, pillar
pōutū, pillar, column
pouliuli, darkness; gloomy
povi, wether, sheep
pu, hollow (adj.); crevice
pua'a, pig
pua'i, to break open
puapuaga, need, distress, misery
pu'ē, to seize, to lay hold of; to take prisoner
puipui, to shut, close. (See fale)
pulatua, to stare fixedly at
pule, shell
pule, authority; to rule, to command
pulou, any sort of head-covering
pulu, pitch, tar
pūlū, bullet (introduced word)
pulumatau, horned cattle; meat
puna, to flow, to well up, to boil, to seethe
punavai, spring of water
puni, to shut, close
punou, to bend, to bow, stoop
punou mata, to lower the eyes
punu, spoon
pupula, to glitter, shine
pupū, to gargle
pupū, opened cocoanut-shell
pusa, to glow
pusaloa, comet
pusa, box, chest
pusatoso, chest of drawers; drawer
puti, cat
puta, fat, corpulent
puta, stomach, maw
pute, mist, fog
pu'upu'u, short

S
sā, forbidden, sacred
sa'ai, to empty
saasaa, small, tiny
sae, to tear, rend
saeluau, divided into two pieces, doubled
saili, to look for
saisai, to bind together
sailo, seed; corn, grain
sala, punishment
salamo, repentance; to repent
sali 'ese, to tear out, pull out
samala, hammer
samani, salmon
samasama, yellow
sami, sea
sanatoto, dysentery
sa'o, to set right, free; irreproachable
sa'olā, saw-fish
sa'oloto, free (adj.), to free, liberate
sasa, whip (n.); to whip
sasa'a, to pour out
sasae, east
sau, to come
sau, dew
sau to'a, frost-rime
saudā, cruel
saudaga, cruelty; pursuit, persecution
sauni, to prepare; ready
sausau, to spout, spring up
saule, south
savali, to go, wander
sāvali, messenger, envoy
savaliga, journey; journey on foot

savili, breeze, breath of wind, air
se'e, to glide
se'evae, shoe, boot
sei, flower; ornament
se'ia, till, as far as
se'ialua, previously, first, before
sela, asthma
sele, to cut, mow
sele mamā, to shave
seleni, shaving
selesele sailo, to reap, harvest
sele'ulu, scissors
selu, comb
semu e!, mode of address when haranguing several people
seoli, hell (from the Hebrew school)
see, to be mistaken, to act wrongly, make an error
setusetutu, to limp
seuscu, to collect wood
sii, to raise, take up, lit up
sii tau, to commence hostilities, war
silai'ila, want
silasila, to see; to know
silasilama'i, publication, notice
silisili, very large; high, big
silisili 'ese, wonderful
sina, some, something
sino, limb
siosio, to lock up; to surround; to besiege
sisi ae, to draw up
sisifo, west
siufofoga, voice (chief-word)
siula, girl
si'usi'u, tail
siua, Samoan dance
soa, deputy suitor for a girl's hand
soali'i, helmsman, boat-steerer
soatau, large boat
sofai, to break through: to break open
sogi, to kiss, rub noses (the ancient Samoan greeting)
sogisogi, to smell; to smell at
soia! leave that! let that alone!
soifua, farewell!, good-bye!
sole! friend!
solo 'a'i'oa, to collect treasures
soli, to trample down, crush
solitulafono, transgression against a law
solo, a monotonous speech made on various occasions
solo, to creep, crawl; round about
soloi, to dry, dry up
solosolo, pocket-handkerchief
solo gutu, table napkin
solofanua, horse
solofanua afi, locomotive engine
soo, scholar, pupil
so'o, often
so'otaga, peace
sopo, lock of hair
sopo, to go over a mountain or across a river
sopola, sopole, care, sorrow (n.); to be concerned about
soso atu, to go towards, approach
soso mai, to come towards, approach
sola, sosola, to flee, avoid
sou, wave, surf
sua, liquid, fluid (n.); to pour
sua, to thrust, push
suafa, name (chief-word)
suāmālie, sweetness; sweet (adj.); lovely, charming
suāsusu, milk
suāsusu to'a, cream
suā'ua, rain
suā'u, cocoanut-oil
suā'u manogi, pomatum
su'e, to demand; to 'search; to prove, try
su'ega, trial, examination, enquiry
su'esu'e, to make enquiries
su'i, to sew, stitch
sui, representative
su'i'ga, seam (n.)
suitupu, regent, viceroy
suli, to inherit; heir
sulu, torch
sulufa'i'ga, place of refuge, asylum
suo, shovel
suotia le fanua, to plough
suotosina, plough (n.)
supa, lame
supo, soup
sūsū, wet (n.), moisture; wet (adj.)
susu, breasts, bosom
susunu, to burn (down)

T

tā, to strike, knock; tā 'ofu, to wash clothes by beating with a stick
taui, welt (of a shoe), bordering
ta'alo, to play, caress, fondle
taalolo, the entertainment of a guest by the whole village
ta'alili vale, uproar, confusion
taanoa, young; a year old (mostly used of beasts)
ta'ati, to lay down, put down
ta'avili, to turn on a lathe
ta'avili afi, engineer, mechanic
ta' e, same as tamā e!, my child!
taeao, to-morrow; on other days, in the morning; morning (n.)
ta'ele, to bathe
ta'elega, bathing-place
taetuli, ship's lantern
tafa, to cut open
tafā, arena, sport enclosure
tafamā'ata, dawn of day
tafao, to go for a walk
tafe, to flow
tafega, river
tafi, to flow; razor
tafu'e, to upset; to hew off
tafu le afi, to light a fire
taga, pocket
taga 'cai, stomach of an animal
tagata, man
tagata agaga, spy

tagata amelika, American (man)
tagata falani, Frenchman
tagata maualuga, giant
tagata peletania, Englishman
tagata samoana, Samoan (man)
tagata siamani, German (man)
tagata tao, soldier
tagi, to cry; to roar (of animals)
tagitagi, bell, hand-bell; to ring, sound; sound (n.)
tangitu'i, to complain; to howl
tago, to take hold of, seize
tāgulu, to snore
tagutagutu, that which is left after a harvest (n.); to glean
tai, nearly, almost
tai, ebb and flow of the tide;
'ua pē le tāi, the tide ebbs;
'ua fan'a e le tāi, the tide is flowing;
'ua sau le tāi, the tide is rising
taiga'zi, trellis, lattice-work
tailua, double (adj.)
ta'imu'a, guide, leader
tāinamu, mosquito-net
ta'iia'i, to guide, lead
tala, narrative, story
tala, dollar
tala'i, to narrate, preach
tala'iga, preacher; sermon, harangue
tala lelei, gospel
talanoa, to talk, converse, relate
talanoaga, fable, narration
talatala, mourning, affliction
tale, to cough
tāli, to answer; to receive, accept; answer (n.)
tali, to wait, stay, expect
tāliga, ear; hearing
talimalo, hospitable
talisuga, banquet (n.)
talita, protection, shelter
talitomu, to believe, consider true
tālo, tātālo, to pray

tālofa! form of greeting corresponding to good-day!
talosaga, prayer
tātu, since
tamu, child, little boy
tamā, father
tama fesui, baby
tama'iia'i, lady, single girl of good birth (is in frequent use)
tamalua, fellow (n.)
tamā'auliga, rich, wealthy
tamateine, daughter of the mother
tamalama'ilima, finger
tamalama'iva'e, toe
tane, husband
tānoa, dish, bowl
tau, to bury
tanu'ia, burial
tao, to bake with hot stones
tāo, to crowd, press
tao, spear
tao, belief; to keep, hold fast to, persist; opinion
taoi, to wreath a garland
tao'ofo, waistcoat
taoto, to lie down; to lay down; to sit down to eat
tapa'a, tobacco
tapisa, to laugh at
tapu, sacred, forbidden: by
	tapu is meant certain things which are forbidden to the people but not to chiefs
tapua'i, to consecrate, worship
tapulima, wrist; cuffs
tālā, to have diarrhoea
tatala, to open, loose, untie, unknot
tatau, to pray
tatāau, worthy, valuable; suitable
tatupu, bough
tau, price, pay, wages; with reference to . . .
ta'u, to tell, narrate
ta'ua, to be called, to signify; to become known
tāu, tāua, war
taualuga, roof
ta’uamitonu, to defend someone; to vindicate
tāuaso, blind
ta’u atu, to indicate, announce, mention
tau’au, shoulder (n.)
tauave, to carry, bear
tauemuga, to mock, deride, scoff at
taufaifeanu, to spit
ta’u’fā’atauwa’a, to esteem one little, despise, scorn
tauaiofo, to be surprised
taufaitagi, to howl
ta’ufua, to indulge in idle talk, waste words
tauga, gift of food
taugagaifo, to set (the sun)
taugata, dear, expensive
taule’a’e’a, or taulele’a, youth, lad
taulima, bracelet
ta’ulogologo, to declaim, recite, lecture
taumafa, to eat, feed (chief-word)
taumafai, to try, take pains, study
taumua, fore-part, bow (of boat, etc.)
taumuli, stern of a vessel
taunuu, to fulfil; to be realised; to appear; to attain; to arrive
tau’o’olo, to be hoarse, husky
taupa’o, border, margin, rim
taupou, virgin, village beauty. (The prettiest maid of a village is selected and adopted by the chief; when grown up she is continually guarded by the young girls of the community and is strictly tapu.)
taupou sā, nun
taupulepule, to advise
tausaga, year
tausamiga, holiday
tau, to bring up, educate; to nurse; to be anxious, worry; to obey an order
tausitama, nurse (n.)
tausua’i, to vex, anger; to stir up conflict
taxi, fisherman
tautala, to speak, address
tautago, to grope about
taumau, to hang
taute, to eat (chief-word)
ta’utino, clear, distinct; to speak openly
tau, to swear, vow; to speak before someone
tautoga, oath, testimony, solemn promise
ta’utu, gossip (n.)
tautua, man-servant
tautu’ufua, to lay eggs
tauvae, foot-ornament of leaves
tavini, servant; to serve
te’a ma, to cease; forsaken (adj.)
te’i, to be frightened, astonished
teine, girl
tei, sulphur
tei’isi, a little
tele, large, great; much
telo, custom-house (introduced word)
telona, customs officer
tepa, to glance, look
tete’e atu, to send back; to resist, oppose
tetemu, dread (n.), fright
teu, to prepare; to clean, polish; to adorn
teuga, ornament, finery
tia’i, to push away, throw away
ti’eti’e, to put; to sit; to ride
tiga, pain (n.); to feel pain
tiga le mānava, stomach-ache
tila, yard (rigging of ship)
tiiti, messenger who swiftly conveys messages, news, etc., to a person
tinā, mother
tino, body, corpse; clearly, distinctively, definitely (when used with verbs, as: ta'utino, tioletino, etc.)
tine'i, to extinguish; to destroy
ti'o, to go to stool
tio, to see clearly, have acute vision
tio'ata, mirror; glass
tipi, to cut
tipolo, lemon
tiputa, women’s clothing	titana, to strangle, throttle
titi, a loin-cloth used when at work
tō, to plant
to, to open, draw, pull	toa, brave (adj.); cock-bird
to'a, to curdle, congeal, freeze
toasa, anger (n.); angry
totama'i, to be angered
toate, again; remaining; backwards
toe aiga, remainder, residue
to'e, to draw out
toe foi mai, to return, come back
toe tu'u mai, to give back, return
tofā, tofāina !, farewell
tofaaga, piece, part (n.)
tofī, tofītofī, to divide, possess, distribute; part (n.); property
tofū, to dip
toga, better quality mat made of the finer fibres
togafiti, trick, dodge, cunning (n.); medicine, remedy
togalauapi, camping-place
togitogi, to notch, or carve in stone
togi, to throw in much the same manner as a cricketer bowling
togiola, pledge (n.), ransom (n.)
to'i, axe, hatchet
to lauapi, to strike camp
toli, to gather fruit from big trees
toloa, wild-duck
toloa'i, young (n.) (of animals)
tonu, true, just, right, straight, direct
to'onai, to lean upon, or against, an object
to'oto'o, walking-stick
to'otuli, to kneel
to'sāito, field, piece of land
toso, to draw, pull out
totini, stockings
toto, blood
tōtōga, entrails
totogi, reward, wages, payment
totogi atu, to pay, compensate
tolo, to creep, crawl
toto ve'a, typhus
tovine, vineyard (introduced word)
tū, to stand; to get up, rise
tu, custom, fashion
tua, outer part; back (human)
tua'afine, sister of a brother
tuagate, brother of a sister
tuai, to hesitate; slow; late
tuai, boundary, limit; neighbour
tuasivi, mountain-range
tufatufa, to distribute
tufuga, workman, labourer
tufuga fai fale, house-builders
tufuga poto, performer, artist
tufuga poto togitogi ma'a, sculptor
tu'i, to sting, prickle; fork (n.)
tu'i, to knock, tap; sting, prickle (n.)
tū'ia, to push, crowd
tu'ifao, smith (nail-maker)
tuiga, head adornment of a yellow colour (a preparation of coral lime) worn only by
chiefs; a small looking-glass and some variegated feathers complete the decoration
tu'ipale, to bruise, squash
tu'itu'i, to knock at
tula, bald
tula'i, to rise, get up
tulafono, law
tutigamanu, hunting
tuli, to drive away, hunt
tuliloa, to pursue, persecute
tulimata'i, to follow with the eyes
tulua', middle (n.), division; midnight, 'o le tulua'a a le ao ma le po
tului, long time, endless
tuluga, servant; end (n.)
tulula, boat
tumau, to hold out, to persist, endure, last
tumu, to fill; full; filled
tumu'tumu, top, summit
tuna, cel
tunoa, kitchen, cookery
tunu, to cook, melt; to cast (metal)
tupe, money
tupu, to originate, grow
tupu, king
tupua, statue; mystery, enigma
tupulaga, race (human), descendants
tusa, to be worth, to be like, resemble
tusa lava, just as, even as
tusa ma', equal, like; according to
tusi, to write; letter, book
tusi o le aitafatu, reckoning, account
tusi pa'ia, Bible
tusitusi, writer; variegated (adj.)
tutu, to light (fire, lamp, etc.)
tutu, to shake, toss
tutu'e, to strike off, knock off
tutupupu'u, white mat, the hairs of which are cut short
tu'u, to allow, let, let go, abandon
tu'u atu, to dismiss; give up
tu'u ai, to put, place
tu'ua'ifua, to slander
tu'ufua, lonely, empty, forsaken
tu'ugalampe, candlestick
tu'ugamama'a, precious stone
tu'ugamau, grave, tomb
tu'ulafoa'i, forsaken
tu'u mai, forsaken
tu'umuli, to go back
tu'upao, border, edge
tu'u po, an appointed time
tu'u tologi, to go bail for, guarantee
tu'utu'u ifo, to let down, lower

U

u, arrow
u, to bite
u, reed, rush
'u, offence, scandal; to look morose
ua, neck, collar; sinew; blood-vessel; rain (n.)
ua ale, heavy shower of rain
uaga, downpour of rain
uaina, wine
ua ma'a'a, wilful; stiff neck
'ua malo, conqueror
uamea, iron
'ua po, late
uati, watch (timepiece)
ualo'a, hail (precipitation)
ufa, household vessel
ufi, roof: cover, lid; to cover
ufinifimata, veil (n.)
ui, to go
ui atu, to go through, across
ui ane, to pass by
uiga, ways and fashions
uia, younger brother
uila, lightning; bicycle
uio, to cry, call out
ula, to smoke; to joke
'ula, neck-chain
ulavale, spiteful; rude, ill-bred
uli, dog (n.)
ulu'i, black
'ulu, saucepan, cooking-pot
'ulu, head; hair
'ulu, bread-fruit tree
ulua, the first
ulu atu, to go in, enter
ulufo'i, to go out
ulufo, to enter a house; to consecrate a house; to appoint a chief to office
ulufo/afo, married couple
ulufo/inina, possessed (adj.)
ulu matua, the eldest
uluola, fruitful, productive
ulusina, grey; white-haired
'umia, all; quite; ready
'umia, length; long
unu, kitchen, cookery
una, scales, scurf
u'u, friend; to howl
upega, net (n.), tool, implement
upu, oration, word; to make a speech
upufa'ataoto, poem, saying
upututu'u, law
usiulili/i, to follow; to obey
uso, brother of a brother; sister of a sister
usu, to rise early; to unite oneself with—viz., to marry
uta, inland, up country
utu, hole, ditch; a vessel to hold liquids
'utu, louse
utufaga, pipe, cigar; cartridge
utufiti, flea
utupoto, beam, rafter
u'u, fist; to hold in the clenched hand; to clench the hand
 wła, to divide into four parts
vaelafo, middle (n.)
vaehua, to halve
vaega, half (n.); part (n.)
vaeluagalemu, half (n.)
vaepi'o, lame
vagavaga'i, to surround; to wander, rove
vaiafi sà, week
vai, water; medicine
vai 'ela, well (of water)
vai/a'au, medicine, physic
vaisoe, chloroform
vai/epa, pond
vaipalolo, winter
vaisofe, running water
vaisoelau, summer
vaisusis, ink
vaisai, weak, feeble
vai, fortune-teller; jester
vaisa, stupid, bashful
vai, colour, dye; to strike out; to paint
valu, to scrape, scratch
vanu, valley, ravine
va/o, field; forest; desert; weed; confusion
vaotagata, mob, rabble
vaogofie, obedient, dutiful
vaomu'a, grass
vaou utuutu, clump of reeds
vasa, straits, narrow waters; ocean
vaasoe, to order, command
vaavao, to forbid, hinder, hold one back
vaoda, outcry, clamour
vaou, quick, swift
vaecao, to-morrow morning
vaega, wonder, marvel
ve'a, water-hen
vete, to rob, plunder
veveta, hot
viti, viti, to praise, glorify
viiga, praise (n.)
viti, to bore, drill
viti momono, corkscrew
viti, die, cube; lot, destiny
vivini, to crow
God, *Atua*
Jesus Christ, *Jesu Keriso*
Holy Ghost, *Atama‘i pai‘ā*  
(Catholic); *Agaga pai‘ā*  
(Protestant)
Angel, *āgelu*
Devil, *tiāpolo*
Heaven, *lagi*
Hell, *seolī; ifelo*
Paradise, *parataiso*
holy, *pai‘ā; sā*
prophet, *perofeta*
apostle, *aposetelo*
Church (as a community),  
*ekalesia*
church (building), *fale sā*
priest, *faife‘au*
Pater, *Patele*
nun, *taupou sā*
religion, *lotu*

Catholic religion, *lotu Pope*
Protestant religion, *lotu poro-tesano*
Christian, *Kerisiano*
heathen, *tagata fa‘apau＊＊＊＊au*
Jew, *tagata Jutaia*
gospel, *tala lelei*
Testament, *feagaiga*
Old Testament, *feagaiga tusi*
New Testament, *feagaiga fou*
sermon, *lauga*
prayer, *tatalo*
faith, *fa‘atuataua*
love, *alo fa‘amanoe*
sin, *agasala*
public worship; divine service,  
*lotu*
prayer-book, *tusi lotu*
holiday, feast, *tausamiga*

world, *lalolagi*
Heaven, *lagi*
sun, *lā*
moon, *māsina*
earth, *labalagi*
soil, ground, *foga‘ele‘ele; ‘ele‘ele, dirt*
morning star, *fetū ao*
sunrise, *o le malama o le taeae*
sunset, *‘o le goto o le lā*
light, *malamalama*
eclipse, obscurity, *pouliuli*
shade, shadow, *paolo*
eclipse of the sun, *gasetoto*
new moon, *māsina fou*

full moon, *māsina ’atoatoa*
star, *fetū*
fixed star, *fetū tū*
shooting star, *fetū lele* (flying)
eclipse of the moon, *gase ‘ele‘ele*
sunset glow, *ataata*
blush of dawn, *tafamaiata*
comet, *pusaha*
est, *sasae*
west, *sisifo*
south, *saute*; *itu i Toga*
north, *matū*
horizon, *tafatata i lagī*
cloud, *ao*
nature, *lagi*
ENGLISH-SAMOAN

III

air, ea; savili
fire, afi
flame, mūmū o le
smoke, asu
steam, asu; ausa
ashes, lefulefu
thunderstorm, faititili
thunder, faititili
lightning, uila
rainbow, nuanua
fog, mist, ausa
water, suā (in general); vai
drop, ’alu’alu
ice, suāo’a
dew, sau
heat, hot weather, vevela
cold, frost, malūlū: ma’alili
summer, vaioelau
winter, vaipalotō
earthquake, mafui’e
rain, timu, ua, timuga
snow, kiona, nive
hail, uato’a
storm, hurricane, afā
wind, matai
breeze, savili
to light a fire, tafu le afi
to burn, mu
firewood, fafiē
coal, kaula
charcoal, mālālā

IV

island, nu’u motu
continent, konetinele
land, nu’u; atunu’u
sea, sami, moana
ocean, moanasāusau
ford over river, asaga
to wade through, or over, asa
dam, pā
well, vai’elī
mountain, mauga
volcano, mauga mū
top, summit, tumutumu
crest, ridge, tuasivi
mountain range, atumauga
mountain path, ala sopo
hill, maupu ’epu’e
valley, vanu
straits, vasa
the tide is falling, ’ua pē le tai
the tide is rising, ’ua sua le tai
wave, billow, galu, sou
cliff, crag, a’au
coast, beach, matafaga
river, stream, vaitefē
spring, well, punāvai
waterfall, afu
bank, shore, ’awai
seawards, i lai, i gatai
landwards, i ute, i gauta
deep, loloto
to swim, a’au
cave, ana
desert, wilderness, vao
boundary, limit, tuaoi
plain, table-land, laugatasi
rock, papa
slope, declivity, tofē
sand, oneone
harbour, aūa, tauloga
peninsula, mulinu’u
lake, vaituloto
pond, vailepa
pool, swamp, palapala, fusi
forest, bush, vao
bush, virgin forest, vao matua
weed, titania, ’o vao
tree, la’au
bough, branch, la
leaf, lau
root, pogai
stone, ma’a
dust, efuefu
time, itu lā, taimi
the present (time), 'o le taimi nei
the past (time), 'o le taimi tuana'i; 'o aso o le vavau
the future, 'o le taimi humana'i
year, tausaga
month, masina
January, Janualie
February, Fepualie
March, Mati
April, Apelile
May, Mei
June, Juni
July, Julai
August, Aokuso
September, Setema
October, Oketopa
November, Novema
December, Tesema
week, vaiaso sā
Sunday, aso sā
Monday, asogafua
Tuesday, asoluua
Wednesday, asolulu
Thursday, asotofa
Friday, asofatalaile

Saturday, asoto'ona'i
day, aso; ao (as opposed to night)
night, po
midnight, 'o le tukua o le ao ma le po
morning, taeao
midday, aoauli
afternoon, evening, ofiafi
to-day, asonei
yesterday, ananafi
to-morrow, taeao
the day after to-morrow, i e lua
earlier, sooner, anamua
late, tuai
long (time), leva
hour, itulā; ituaso (day)
hour, itupō (night)
watch (timepiece), uati
What is the time? pe efa le itu lā? pe efa le vaiaso?
It is seven o'clock, e fitu
minute, minute
moment, instant, 'emo o le mata; mataemio
lifetime, old age, ologa, ola
death, oti

people, nation, nu'u
foreigner, papalagi
native inhabitant, tagata moni o le nu'u
slave, tagata nofo pologa
king, tupu
queen, masiofo
prince, alo o le tupu
kingdom, malō
capital city, or town, laumua
crown, pale alii
legislative assembly, fono
justice, fa'amanaoni
injustice, fa'alēmaoni
law, tulafono

proclamation, silasilamai
session of the court, fa'amasino
courage, justice of the peace, fa'amasino
to accuse, moli atu
guilt, agasala
lawyer, loia
crime, offence, sala
chief, noble, alii
office, lofaga
official, lofa o le malō
government, malō
Minister, faipule
Governor, kovano
Viceroy, regent, su'itupu
town, aai, 'ai
village, aai
government official, kooleo o le malo

to perjure, swear falsely, tauto pepe

to swear (an oath), tauto

tax, impost, lafoga

charity, alms, mea alofa

murderer, tagata fasioti
to murder, fasioti

theft, gaofi

thief, tagata gaofi

robber, tagata fao mea

punishment, sala

pardon, mercy, alofa

prison, fale puipui

to take prisoner, pu'epu'e
evidence, testimony, molima

soldier, fitaflita

trooper, tagata ti'eti'e i le solo-

fana

army, 'o 'au

captain, alii ave 'au

envoy, savali

war, tau

peace, so'otaga

battle, tau

conflict, combat, foga'uega
to pitch camp, i to lawapi

tent, fale 'ie

baggage, avega

spy, tagata asiasi
to besiege, siosio
to conquer, mau
to plunder, vete
gun, rifle, fana
cannon, fanafanua

bullet, pulu

battlefield, tafoa

victory, malo

enemy, 'o le ita, fili

prisoner, captive, tagataotaua
to flee, sosola

to pursue, tuliloa

vanguard, mu'au

rearguard, muli'a

to march, savali
camp (n.), lawapi
gunpowder, one
cartridge, uufaga
to shoot, fana

sword, pelu

spear, tao

shield, talita

bow, aufana

arrow, u

class, uatogi

VIII

town, aai, 'ai

street, path, ala

plaster, pa'e'epae

market-place, maloe

bridge, alavai, ala laupapa

house, fale

chief's house, moala

guest-house, fale talimalo

hospital, fale ma'i

school, fale fai aoga

church (building), fale sa

watch-house, 'olo

post, poseta

court of justice, fale fa'amasino
drinking-saloon, fale'ava papa-
lagi

store, shop, fale 'oloa, fale 'oa
garden, ioaga

well, vai'eti
house, *fale*
roof, *fale aluga*
door, *faitotoa*
staircase, *ala fa’apefa’i*
compound, court, *lotoā*
wall, *pā*
neighbour, *tuaoi*
room, *potu*
sitting-room, *potu nonofo*
bedroom, *potu momoe*
bath-room, *potu ta’ele*
lock, bar (to door), *fa’amau*
key, *ki*
floor, *fogā ’ele’ele*
window, *fa’amalama*
curtain, *’ie fa’amalama*
board, plank, *laupapa*
stove, oven, *ogāumu*
firewood, *fasē*
coal, *kaola*
charcoal, *mālālā*
candlestick, *pelita*
lamp, *lamepa, moli*
oil, *suāu’u*
table, *laulau*
chair, *nofoa*
chest of drawers, *pusetoso*
bed, *moega*
cushion, pillow, *ali, aluga*
box, chest, *pusa*
mirror, *tioata*
mosquito-net, *tainamu*
kitchen, *paito, umu*
veranda, *poletito*
closet, *fale ui*
pot, pan, *pani, ’ulo*
cover, lid, *uli*
to grind, *’olo*
basket, *ato*
bottle, *fagu*
cork, *momoHo*
corkscrew, *vili momono*
to offer, prepare (food), *sauni*
dish, bowl, *tānoa*
table-napkin, *soloigutu*
knife, *naifi*
fork, *tui*
spoon, *pumu*
blunt, dull, *matatupa*
sharp, *ma’ai*
plate, *ipu’ai*
cup, *ipu ti*
glass, *ipu malamalama*
drinking-glass, tumbler, *ipu inu*
glass (in general), *tioata*

food, *mea e ’ai*
to nourish, *fafaga*
to eat, *’ai*
meal, repast, *’aiga*
evening meal, dinner, *taligasua*
to be thirsty, *fiainu*
to be hungry, *fa’ai*
to chew, *māmā, lamu*
soup, *supo, piasua* (consisting of
cocoanut-milk, starch, and
water)
meat, *pulumatau*
fat, bacon, *ga’o*
fish, *’a*
salmon, *samani*

river-eel, *tuna*
sea-eel, *pusi*
turtle, *lawnei*
crab, *ulōcai*
rice, *laisa’*
bread, *falaoa, areto*
piece of bread, *se fāsi falaoa*
butter, *pata*
cheese, *suāsusū to’a*
milk, *suāsusū*
fruit, *fua*
egg, *fuāmoa*
cake, *poto’i*
salt, *masima*
oil, *suāu’u*
vinegar, vineta
sugar, suka
honey, meli
cocoanut, niu
banana, fa'i
taro, talo
orange, moli'aina
bread-fruit, ulu
maize, sana

sugar-cane, tolo
drink, beverage, inumaga
water, vai
wine, vaina
spirituous liquor, 'ava papalagi
beer, pia
chocolate, siokolata
coffee, kave
tea, ti

clothing, 'ofu
to draw on (clothes), dress, 'ofu,
fa'a'ofu
to draw out, extract, talala'ese, to'ese
coat, peleue
great-coat, 'ofu tele
collar, ua
stuff, cloth, 'ie
pocket, taga
button, fa'amau
to button up, fa'amau
waistcoat, tao 'ofu
trousers, 'ofuwae
shirt, 'ofu tino
stockings, totine
shoe, boot, se'evae
leather, pa'u
hat, pulou
glove, se'elima
cuffs, tapulima
pocket handkerchief, solosolo
watch, uati
walking-stick, to'oto'o
shade, screen, fa'amalu
pipe, utufaga, paipa
cigar, paipa
tobacco, iapa'a
fan, ili

ring, mama
bracelet, taulima
loin-cloth, lavalava
necklet, ula
lock of hair, sope, foga
ornament, finery, teu
comb, selu
fly-flap, fue
woman's clothing, tiputa
garland, pale
veil, ufuufimata
washing (just washed), tā 'ofu
washing (soiled clothes), 'ofu 'ele'ele
to wash (clothes), tā
washer, tagata tā 'ofu
dry, mago
wet, sīsū
to iron, smooth, āuli
to tear, rip, māsaē
soap, moli
starch, masoā
scissors, sele'ulu
to sew, stitch, su'i
needle, nila
pin, pine
thread, filo
sewing-machine, la'au su'isū'i

forehead, muā'ulu
eye, mata
eyelid, laumata
eyebrows, fulufufumata
tear (drop), loimata
nose, *isu*, *pogaisu*
cheek, *alāfau*
temple, *ivī manisinisi*
ear, *talgā*
mouth, *gutu*
lip, *laugutu*
tongue, *laulaulusaiva*
throat, larynx, *fa'at*
tooth, *nifo*
beard, *ava*
neck, *ua*
nape of the neck, *ua*
shoulder, *tav'au*
back, *tua*
skin, *pa'u*
arm, *lima*
right arm, *lima taumatavu*
left arm, *lima tauagavale*
joint of limb, *gauga, ponaivi*
elbow, *tuititama*
hand, *lima*
palm of the hand, *alofitilama*
finger, *tama'ilila*
thumb, *lima mataua*
finger-nail, *atigi, maiv'u*
fist, *u'u*
wrisk, *tapulima*
hip, *suilapalapa*
side, *itū*
rib, *iviaso*
muscle, *anogase*
boim, *fatafata*
brasts, *susu*
trunk, body, *tino*
stitch, *manava*
leg, *vae*
 thigh, *ogavae*
knee, *tulivae*
calf (of leg), *aleva*
foot, *vae*
toe, *tama'iva*
sole of the foot, *alofivae*
sinew, tendon, *ua*
nerve, *neura*
bblood, *toto*
heart, *fatu*; *loto* (as seat of the passions)
vein, artery, *ua*
lungs, *māmā*
breath, breathing, *manava*
maw, stomach, *puta*
liver, *ate*
gall, bile, *au*
kidney, *fatuga'o*
testines, *ga'au*
saliva, *feanuga*
strength, *mālosi*
weakness, *vaivai*
sleep, *moe*

**VOCABULARY**

**XIII**

life, *ola*
death, *otī*
health, *malōlō*
illness, *mā'i*
pain, *tīgā*
headache, *tīgā o le 'ulu*
cough (n.), *tale*
fever, *ma'i vevela*
shivers, cold fit, *ma'i ma'alili*
smallpox, *lupani papaiagi*
matter, pus, *alou*
lameness, *supa*
diarhhea, *taia*
dysentery, *sanatoto*
vomiting, *pua'i*
consumption, *māmā pale*
flammation, *mū o le māmā*
epidemic, pestilence, *fa'ama'i*
swoon, fainting-fit, *malapoga*
cramp, convulsions, *ma'i māliu*
wound, *manu'a*
ulcer, abscess, *papala*
scar, *ilīganoa*
rheumatism, *gūgū*
blind, *mataivi, tiaa*
dumb, *gūgū*
to limp, *setusetu*
crple (n.), *pipili*
deaf, lutuli
to stutter, nanu
hump-backed, 'o le tua pi'o
giant (n.), tagata mauahuga
physician, doctor, foma'i
to cure, heai, fō, fōfō
chemist's shop, fale vaiala'au
operation; trick, dodge, togafiti
medicine, physic, vaiala'au
prescription, recipe, tusifō
chemist, tagata fai vaiala'au
to beg for medicine, talavai

XIV

family, aiga
kin, relationship, aiga
parents, matua
ancestor, anamua
descendants, fānau
sex, tupulaga
husband, tane
wife; avā
marriage, ipoipoga
bride, fa'aloanofotane (obsolete)
bridegroom, fa'ataoafaiava (ob-
solete)
father, tamā
mother, tinā
child, tama
children (in general), fānau
girl, tama teine
grandchild, 'o le tama o fānau
first-born, ulumatau
younger brother, uii
son, atali'i
brother of a brother, uso
sister of a sister, uso

brother of a sister, tuagane
sister of a brother, tuafāfine
daughter (of the father), afa
fine
daughter (of the mother), tama-
teine
younger brother, taulele'a; mā-
aia (chief-word)
lady, tama'ita'i
uncle, 'o le uso o le tamā (paternal
side)
uncle, 'o le tuagane o le tinā
(maternal side)
aunt, 'o le tuafāfine o le tamā
(paternal side)
aunt, 'o le uso o le tinā (maternal
side)
to inherit, sulī
widower, 'o le tagata 'ua e oti le
avā
widow, 'o le fāfine 'ua e oti le
tane
inheritance, tofī

XV

to teach, a'oa'o
school-house, fale fa'aa'oga
teacher, faia'oga
pupil, soo
word, upu
letter of the alphabet, mata'itusi
grammar, fa'amatalaga o le ga-
gana
book, letter, tusi
slate, writing tablet, ma'atusi
pencil, penetala
vowel, vaueli
consonant, konesane
syllable, silaepela
to read, faitau
to write, tusi
to count, reckon, faitau
paper, pepa, laupepa
ink, vaitusi
pen, pene
slate-pencil, pene ma'a
VOCABULARY

XVI

trade, handicraft, fa'iva
workman, tufuga
work (n.), galuega
tool, fa'iva
joiner, mataisau
carpenter, tufuga fa'i fale
smith, tu'ifao (nail-maker)
hammer, samala
pincers, 'o'ifi
saw, ili
screw, faovili
nail, fao

mechanic, ta'avili afi
tanner, tagata fa'i pa'u manu
miller, tagata fa'a'olo
mill, 'olo
millstone, ma'a'olo
meal, falaoamata
tailor, tagata fa'i 'ofu
baker, faifalaoa
butcher, fasi manu
potter, tufuga fa'i ipu omea
printer, limimusisi
writer, clerk, tusitusi

XVII

trader, merchant, tagata fa'atau
to trade, fa'atau
to buy, fa'atau mai
to sell, fa'atau atu
cheap, taugofie
dear, tangata
store, shop, fale oloa, fale 'oa
merchandise, oloa
market, malae
price, tau
payment, totogi
account, bill, tusi o le 'aitalafu
litre, lita
metre, meta

foot (measure), futu
pound, pauna
money, tupe
gold coin, tupe auro
silver coin, tupe ario
shilling, seleni
penny, peni
dollar, tală
cent, seneta, keneta
to change, exchange, liu
letter, tusi
envelope, wrapper, teutusi
measure (n.), weight, fua
balance, pair of scales, fua

XVIII

farmer, 'o le tōtō fanua
to farm, take on lease, mau
totogi
planting, maumaga
field, fanua
manure, dung, otaota
plough (n.), suotosina
to plough, suotia le fanua
seed, sāito
harvest, crop, selesielseāito
to harvest, selesiĐe
barn, shed, fale sāito
straw, aputu sāito
hay, mutia mago

herd, flock, lafu
shepherd, herdsman, leoleo
stable, latoa
hunting, tuligamu
to hunt, chase, tuli manu
hunter, sportsman, tagata tuli manu
forest, bush, vao
fisherman, tautai
fish-hook, matau
garden, toaga
gardener, tagata teuteu toaga
axe, to'i
animal, manu
hide, skin, pa'u
hair, fulufulu
tail, iu, susi'u
four-footed animal, manu vaefā
bear, urosa
dog, māile, ulī
cat, pusī
lion, leona
claw (n.), atigivāe
mouse, 'imoa
rat, isumu
rabbit, hare, rapiti
pig, pu'a'a
horse, solofanau
hoof, atigivāe
donkey, āsini
stag, āila
roe, deer, tia
ox, pulumakau
bull, povī po'a
cow, povī fāfine
calf, tama'ipovi
goat, 'oti
sheep, māmoe
bird, manu lele (plural, manu felele'i)

nest, ofaga
wing, apa'au
bill, beak, gatu
feathers, 'o fulu
egg, fua
eagle, aeto
pigeon, dove, lupe
hen, moa
cock, toa
to crow, vivini
duck, pato
wild-duck, toloa
sea-gull, gogo
heron, mātu'u
starling, fuia
parrot, segasamoa
owl, lulu
fish, 'a
eel, tupa
shark, malie
saw-fish, sa'ola
cuttle-fish, fe'e
snake, gata
turtle, laumei
lizard, pili
beetle, mogamoga
ant, boi
bee, lagomeli
honey, meli
wasp, lagomumū
butterfly, pepe, lelefua
caterpillar, worm, anufe
gnat, mosquito, namu
fly, garova, lago
spider, apogāłelevalevē
scorpion, atalava

plant (n.), la'au
tree, la'au
root, poga'i
bark, pa'u
bough, branch, la
leaf, lau
bud, fua e lē mata la
blossom, fuga, sei
fruit, fua
banana, fa'i
melon, esi
cocoanut-palm, niu
cocoanut, popo
lemon, tipolo
orange, moli'ina
bread-fruit tree, 'ulu
taro, talo
pineapple, fala
sugar-cane, tolo
rice, laisa
maize, sana
tobacco, tapa'a
yam, ufi
pea, pi
onion, aniani
grass, muitia